Working Draft American National Standard

T10 Project 1142D

Revision 13
15-Jul-97

Information technology - SCSI Parallel Interconnect-2 (SPI-2)

This is a draft proposed American National Standard of Accredited Standards Committee NCITS. As such this is not a completed standard. The T10 Technical Committee may modify this document as a result of comments received during public review and its approval as a standard. Use of the information contained here in is at your own risk.

ASC T10 Technical Editor: George O. Penokie
IBM
MS 2B7
3605 Highway 52 N.
Rochester, MN 55901
USA

Telephone: 507-253-5208
Facsimile: 507-253-2880
Email: gop@us.ibm.com

Reference number
ISO/IEC ***** : 199x
ANSI NCITS. - 199x

Printed Monday, July 21, 1997 7:36 pm

POINTS OF CONTACT:

T10 Chair
John B. Lohmeyer
Symbios Logic
4420 Arrows West Drive
Colo Spgs, CO 80907-3444
Tel: (719) 533-7560
Fax: (719) 593-7036
Email: john.lohmeyer@symbios.com

T10 Vice-Chair
Lawrence J. Lamers
Adaptec
691 South Milpitas Blvd
Milpitus, CA 95035
Tel: (408) 975-7817
Fax: (408) 957-7193
Email: ljlamers@aol.com

NCITS Secretariat
NCITS Secretariat
1250 Eye Street, NW Suite 200
Washington, DC 20005
Telephone: 202-737-8888
Facsimile: 202-638-4922
Email: ncits@itic.nw.dc.us

T10 Reflector Internet address for subscription of the T10 reflector: majordomo@symbios.com

Internet address for distribution via T10 reflector: T10@symbios.com

SCSI Bulletin Board 719-533-7950

Document Distribution
Global Engineering
15 Inverness Way East
Englewood, CO 80112-5704
Telephone: 303-792-2181 or 800-854-7179
Facsimile: 303-792-2192

ABSTRACT

This standard defines mechanical, electrical, and timing requirements for the SCSI Parallel Interconnect and the command and task management delivery protocol required to transfer commands and data between SCSI initiators and SCSI targets attached to an SCSI-3 Parallel Interface. This standard is intended to be used in conjunction with the SCSI command sets. The resulting interface facilitates the interconnection of computers and intelligent peripherals and thus provides a common interface standard for both systems integrators and suppliers of intelligent peripherals.

PATENT STATEMENT

CAUTION: The developers of this standard have requested that holder's of patents that may be required for the implementation of the standard, disclose such patents to the publisher. However neither the developers nor the publisher have undertaken a patent search in order to identify which if any patents may apply to this standard.

As of the date of publication of this standard and following calls for the identification of patents that may be required for the implementation of this standard, no such claims have been made. No further patent search is conducted by the developer or publisher in respect to any standard it processes. No representation is made or implied that licenses are not required to avoid infringement in the use of this standard.

Contents

Tables

Figures

Revision history/old editor notes

Rev 13

Editor notes from rev 12.

Editors Note 1 - GOP: Where are the voltage withstanding requirements defined in the above paragraph?

Editors Note 2 - GOP: SPI-2 implies that the terminator power lines are 32 AWG. Is that right?

Editors Note 3 - GOP: What is the conductor size for term power lines for Fast-40?

Editors Note 4 - GOP: The two impedance tables use the SPI numbers for the Fast-10 impedance values not the SCSI-2 values which are different.

Editors Note 5 - GOP: The propagation delay tables use the SPI number for Fast-10 values not the SCSI-2 values which are different. SCSI-2 specs the following for Fast-10 cables: Signal attenuation: 0,095 dB maximum per meter at 5 Mhz, Pair-to-pair propagation delay delta: 0,20 ns maximum per meter, and DC resistance: 0,230 ohm maximum per meter at 20 deg C.

Editors Note 6 - GOP: The ground offset voltage is only specified in Fast-20. By placing it here it now applied to all data transfer rates. Is this OK?

Editors Note 7 - GOP: The underlined section in b) is from F-20 and not in SPI. The underlined section in f) is from SPI and not in F-20. The paragraph after the list is in F-20 but not in SPI .

Editors Note 8 - GOP: The removed SPI text is replaced by the figure and note after figure from F-20. The added paragraph is in SPI but not in F-20.

Editors Note 9 - GOP: The cross out text is what is currently in SPI the underlined test is from F-20.

Editors Note 10 - GOP: The new wording for glitch filtering should be added here.

Editors Note 11 - GOP: I reformatted the above table. I do not believe any information was lost. But it needs to be checked over.

Editors Note 12 - GOP: I reformatted the above table. I do not believe any information was lost. But it needs to be checked over.

Editors Note 13 - GOP: Did anything change here as result of working group discussions about detecting LVD/SE changes .

Editors Note 14 - GOP: Do not have a DXF file of this figure.

Editors Note 15 - GOP: The two paragraphs below are from SPI-2 R11 and directly conflict with SCSI-2, SPI, and Fast-20 in that SPI-2 R11 allows term power to come from sources other than the TERMPWR line. See underlined text.

Editors Note 16 - GOP: See previous Ed note.

Editors Note 17 - GOP: I cannot believe the table below; how can we have four different

sets of values for SE terminators. And what are the general and 0,2V dropout regulator terminator types? They do not seem to be defined anywhere.

Editors Note 18 - GOP: Above is in SCSI-2 but not in SPI.

Editors Note 19 - GOP: The above is in SPI-2 and nowhere else.

Editors Note 20 - GOP: There is no definition of V_N, V_{BIAS}, or V_A in the above figure.

Editors Note 21 - GOP: The above table is a combination of SCSi-2, SPI, SPI-2, SIP, and FAST-20. The underlined entries were added to the base table which came from Fast-20. All the Fast-40 were extracted from drawings and text in SPI-2 r11 because there was no SCSI bus timing value table. The double underlined value is 45 ns in SPI so what should it be 20 ns or 24 ns. The ?? entries were not defined at the higher data transfer rates, should that be n/a or to some other value?

Editors Note 22 - GOP: From SCSI-2

Editors Note 23 - GOP: From SCSI-2

Editors Note 24 - GOP: From SCSI-2

Editors Note 25 - GOP: Need voltage number for the y-axis in figure 45.

Editors Note 26 - GOP: The above is redundant information that is in the timing table.

Editors Note 27 - GOP: This entire subclause is from 97-270r2.

Editors Note 28 - GOP: The above is from 97-141r3.

Editors Note 29 - GOP: The above was added from 96-270r2.

Editors Note 30 - GOP: The above is from 96-268r0.

Editors Note 31 - GOP: The above was added from 96-270r2.

Editors Note 32 - GOP: The above paragraph is from 97-141r3.

Editors Note 33 - GOP: The above paragraph does not make any sense.

Editors Note 34 - GOP: Underlined section above makes no sense.

Editors Note 35 - GOP: I think this annex is dated and should be removed.

Foreword

This foreword is not part of ANSI NCITS. - 199x.

The SCSI-3 Interlocked Protocol standard is divided into the following clauses:

- Clause 1 is the scope;
- Clause 2 enumerates the normative references that apply to this standard;
- Clause 3 describes the definitions, symbols and abbreviations used in this standard;
- Clause 4 describes the overview (i.e. model of the of SCSI parallel interface) and conventions used in this standard;
- Clause 5 describes the connectors;
- Clause 6 describes the cable characteristics;
- Clause 7 describes the electrical characteristics;
- Clause 8 describes the SCSI bus signals;
- Clause 9 describes the bus timing;
- Clause 10 describes the removal and insertion of SCSI devices;
- Clause 11 describes the SCSI logical characteristics;

Annexes A, B, and C form an integral part of this standard. Annexes D to K are for information purposes only.

Requests for interpretation, suggestions for improvement and addenda, or defect reports are welcome. They should be sent to the NCITS Secretariat, Computer and Business Equipment Manufacturers Association, 1250 Eye Street, NW, Suite 200, Washington, DC 20005-3922.

This standard was processed and approved for submittal to ANSI by Accredited Standards Committee on Information Processing Systems, NCITS. Committee approval of the standard does not necessarily imply that all committee members voted for approval.

At the time it approved this standard, Committee X3 had the following members:

Technical Committee X3T10 on Lower Level Interfaces, which approved this standard, had the following members:

John B. Lohmeyer, Chair
Lawrence J. Lamers, Vice-Chair
Ralph O. Weber, Secretary

Introduction

The SCSI protocol is designed to provide an efficient peer-to-peer I/O bus with up to 32 devices, including one or more hosts. Data may be transferred asynchronously or synchronously at rates that depend primarily on device implementation and cable length.

SCSI is an I/O interface that can be operated over a wide range of media and data rates. The objectives of the parallel interface in SCSI are:

a) To provide host computers with device independence within a class of devices. Thus, different disk drives, tape drives, printers, optical media drives, and other devices can be added to the host computers without requiring modifications to generic system hardware. Vendor unique indications are accommodated. Reserved areas are provided for future standardization.
b) To provide interoperability with SCSI-2 devices. Devices meeting SCSI-2 and the SCSI Parallel Interface-2 standards can co-exist on the same bus. SCSI-3 devices should be permissive of the SCSI-2 or SCSI-3 compliant behavior of other devices including those not implementing optional extensions of the SCSI Parallel Interface-2 Standard.

The interface protocol includes provision for the connection of multiple initiators (SCSI devices capable of initiating a task) and multiple targets (SCSI devices capable of responding to a request to perform a task). Distributed arbitration (i.e., bus-contention logic) is built into the architecture of parallel SCSI. A priority system awards interface control to the highest priority SCSI device that is contending for use of the bus.

With any technical document there may arise questions of interpretation as new products are implemented, The NCITS Committee has established procedures to issue technical opinions concerning the standards developed by the NCITS organization. These procedures may result in SCSI Technical Information Bulletins being published by NCITS.

Any such bulletins, while reflecting the opinion of the Technical Committee that developed the standard, are intended solely as supplementary information to other users of the standard. This standard, ANSI NCITS. - 199x, as approved though the publication and voting procedures of the American National Standards Institute, is not altered by these bulletins. Any subsequent revision to this standard may or may not reflect the contents of any such Technical Information Bulletins.

Current NCITS practice is to make Technical Information Bulletins available through:

Global Engineering	Telephone:	303-792-2181 or
15 Inverness Way East		800-854-7179
Englewood, CO 80112-5704	Facsimile:	303-792-2192

1 Scope

This standard defines the mechanical, electrical, timing, and protocol requirements of the SCSI parallel interface to allow conforming devices to inter-operate. The SCSI parallel interface is a local I/O bus that can be operated over a wide range of data rates. The objectives of the SCSI parallel interface are

a) To provide host computers with device independence within a class of devices. Thus, different disk drives, tape drives, printers, optical media drives, and other devices can be added to the host computers without requiring modifications to generic system hardware. Provision is made for the addition of special features and functions through the use of vendor-specific options. Reserved areas are provided for future standardization.
b) To provide compatibility such that properly conforming SCSI-2 devices may interoperate with SCSI-3 devices given that the systems engineering is correctly done. Properly conforming SCSI-2 devices should respond in an acceptable manner to reject SCSI-3 protocol extensions. SCSI-3 protocol extensions are designed to be permissive of such rejections and thus allow the SCSI-2 devices to continue operation without requiring the use of the extension.

The interface protocol includes provision for the connection of multiple initiators (SCSI devices capable of initiating an I/O process) and multiple targets (SCSI devices capable of responding to a request to perform an I/O process). Distributed arbitration (i.e., bus-contention logic) is built into the architecture of SCSI. A priority system awards interface control to the highest priority SCSI device that is contending for use of the bus.

This standard defines the physical attributes of an input/output bus for interconnecting computers and peripheral devices.

Figure 1 is intended to show the general structure of SCSI standards. The figure is not intended to imply a relationship such as a hierarchy, protocol stack, or system architecture. It indicates the applicability of a standard to the implementation of a given transport.

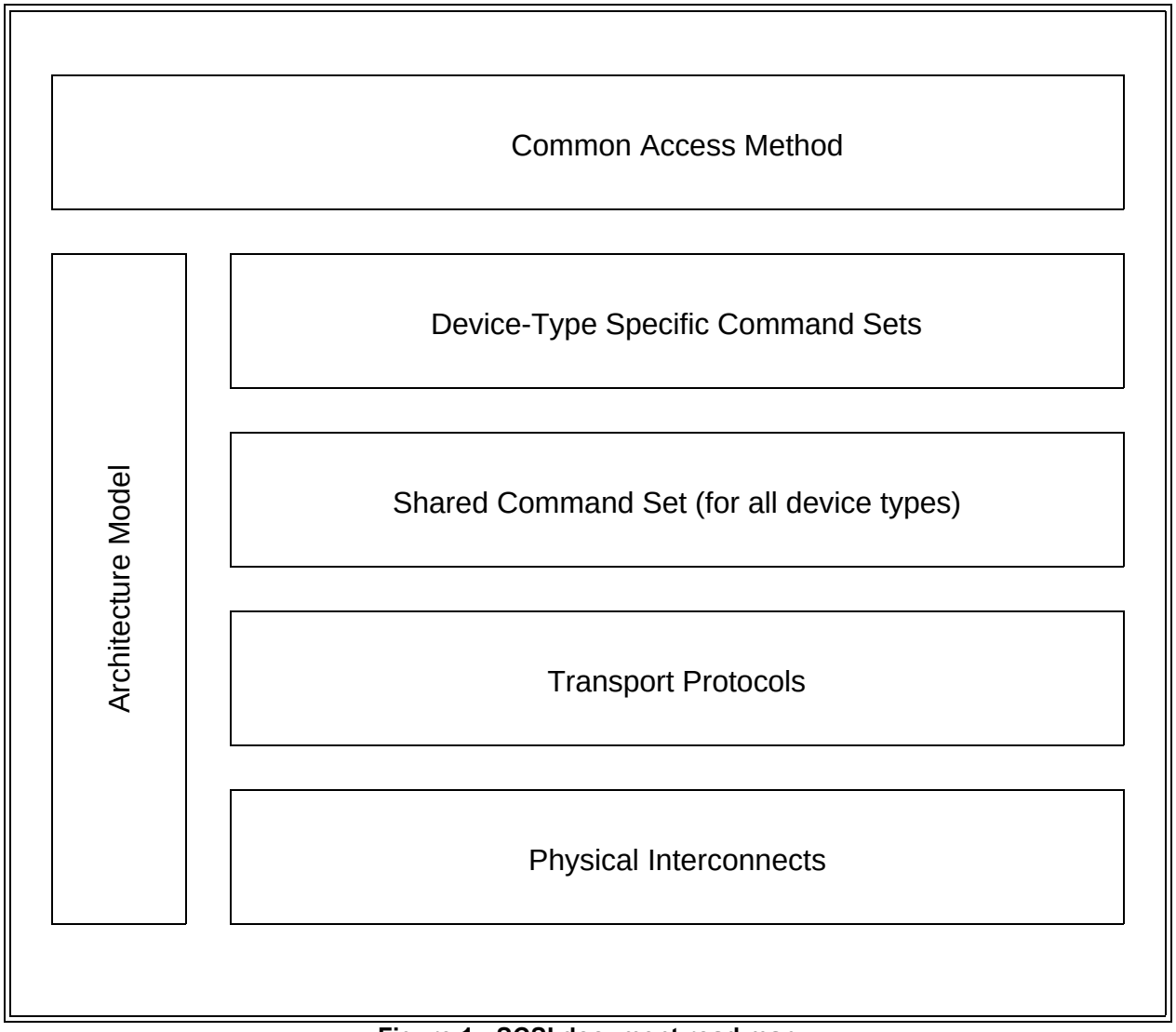


Figure 1 - SCSI document road map

At the time this standard was generated examples of the SCSI general structure included:

Physical Interconnects:

Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop [X3t11/960D]
Fiber Channel - Physical and Signaling Interface [X3.230-1994]
High Performance Serial Bus [IEEE 1394-1995]
SCSI-3 Parallel Interface - 2 [this standard]
Serial Storage Architecture Physical Layer 1 [X3.293]
Serial Storage Architecture Physical Layer 2 [X3T10/1146D]

Transport Protocols:

Serial Storage Architecture Transport Layer 1 [X3.295]
SCSI-3 Fiber Channel Protocol [X3.269]
SCSI-3 Fiber Channel Protocol - 2 [X3t10/1144D]
SCSI-3 Serial Bus Protocol - 2 [X3T10/1155D]
Serial Storage Architecture SCSI-2 Protocol [X3.294]
Serial Storage Architecture SCSI-3 Protocol [X3T10/1051D]

Serial Storage Architecture Transport Layer 2 X3T10/1147D]

Shared Command Set:

SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard [X3T10/995D]
SCSI Primary Commands-2 Standard [T10/xxxxD]

Device-Type Specific Commands Sets:

SCSI-3 Block Commands [X3T10/996D]
SCSI-3 Enclosure Services [X3T10/1212D]
SCSI-3 Stream Commands [X3T10/997D]
SCSI-3 Medium Changer Commands [X3T10/999D]
SCSI-3 Controller Commands [X3.276]
SCSI Controller Commands - 2 [T10/1225D]
SCSI-3 Multimedia Command Set [X3T10/1048D]
SCSI-3 Multimedia Command Set - 2 [X3T10/1228D]

Architecture Model:

SCSI-3 Architecture Model [X3.270]
SCSI Architecture Model - 2 [X3T10/1157D]

Common Access Method:

SCSI Common Access Method [X3.232]
SCSI Common Access Method - 3 [X3T10/990D]

The term SCSI is used wherever it is not necessary to distinguish between the versions of SCSI. The Small Computer System Interface - 2 (ANSI X3.131-1994), is referred to herein as SCSI-2. The term SCSI-3 in this standard refers to versions of SCSI defined since SCSI-2

2 Normative references

The following standards contain provisions which, through reference in the text, constitute provisions of this standard. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the standards listed below.

Copies of the following documents can be obtained from ANSI: Approved ANSI standards, approved and draft international and regional standards (ISO, IEC, CEN/CENELEC, ITUT), and approved and draft foreign standards (including BSI, JIS, and DIN). For further information, contact ANSI Customer Service Department at 212-642-4900 (phone), 212-302-1286 (fax) or via the World Wide Web at http://www.ansi.org.

Additional availability contact information is provided below as needed.

2.1 Approved references

Small Computer System Interface - 2 (ANSI X3.131-1994)
SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard, ANSI X3.270 - 1996
SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard, ANSI X3.301 - 1997
Detail Specification for Trapezoidal Connectors with Non-removable Ribbon Contacts on 1.27 mm Pitch Double Row used with Single Connector Attachments (SCA-2), EIA-700A0AE (SP-3651)
Detail Specification for Trapezoidal Connector 0.8mm Pitch used with Very High Density Cable Interconnect (VHDCI),EIA-700A0AF (SP-3652)

2.2 References under development

At the time of publication, the following referenced standards were still under development. For information on the current status of the document, or regarding availability, contact the relevant standards body or other organization as indicated.

SCSI Architecture Model-2 Standard, ANSI T10/xxxxD

NOTE 1 - For more information on the current status of the document, contact the X3 Secretariat at 202-737-8888 (phone), 202-638-4922 (fax) or via Email at x3sec@itic.nw.dc.us. To obtain copies of this document, contact Global Engineering at 15 Inverness Way East Englewood, CO 80112-5704 at 303-792-2181 (phone), 800-854-7179 (phone), or 303-792-2192 (fax).

3 Definitions, symbols, abbreviations, and conventions

3.1 Definitions

3.1.1 A cable: A 50-conductor cable that provides an primary 8-bit DATA BUS and control signals.

3.1.2 ACKx: A bus signal that is either the ACK or ACKQ signal.

3.1.3 agent: Carries out the actions of a requested service following the rules of the protocol.

3.1.4 application client: An object that is the source of SCSI commands. Further definition of an application client can be found in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

3.1.5 asynchronous event notification: A procedure used by targets to notify initiators of events that occur when a pending task does not exist for that initiator.

3.1.6 asynchronous transfer: An information transfer that uses the asynchronous REQ/ACK handshake.

3.1.7 auto-contingent allegiance: A condition of a task set following the return of a CHECK CONDITION or COMMAND TERMINATED status. See the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard for a detailed definition of auto-contingent allegiance.

3.1.8 bus: the electrical path directly between the bus terminators.

3.1.9 byte: Indicates an 8-bit construct.

3.1.10 confirmation: The last step of a confirmed service informing the upper protocol layer that the requested service has been completed.

3.1.11 confirmed protocol service: A service available at the protocol service interface, that requires confirmation of completion.

3.1.12 contact: The electrically-conductive portion of a connector associated with a single conductor in a cable.

3.1.13 connection: An initial connection or reconnection. A connection can only occur between one initiator and one target on the same bus. A connection begins with an initial connection or a reconnection and n ends with the next disconnect.

3.1.14 current task: A task that is in the process of sending status, transferring data, or transferring command data to or from the initiator.

3.1.15 data bus. An 8-bit,16-bit or 32-bit data bus (see Section 8.1).

3.1.16 differential. A signalling alternative that employs differential drivers and receivers to improve signal-to-noise ratios and increase maximum cable lengths (also see 3.1.31 SE). Includes both LVD and HVD differential drivers and receivers.

3.1.17 disconnect: The action that occurs when a SCSI device releases control of the SCSI bus, allowing it to go to the BUS FREE phase.

3.1.18 driver: the circuitry used to force the state of the bus.

3.1.19 dual port: SCSI devices that provide two SCSI connectors in a dual port configuration that allows any port to connect to the attached logical unit(s).

3.1.20 fast-5: Synchronous data transfer rates less than or equal to 5 megatransfers per second.

3.1.21 fast-10: Synchronous data transfer rates ~~greater than 5 megatransfers and~~ less than or equal to 10 megatransfers per second.

3.1.22 fast-20: Synchronous data transfer rates ~~greater than 10 megatransfers and~~ less than or equal to 20 megatransfers per second.

3.1.23 fast-40: Synchronous data transfer rates ~~greater than 20 megatransfers and~~ less than or equal to 40 megatransfers per second.

3.1.24 flag: An abstraction indicating that the condition will be communicated to the recipient of the flag.

3.1.25 field: A group of one or more contiguous bits.

3.1.26 high voltage differential: Differential voltage that is high compared to the low voltage differential version (i.e., the high voltage differential levels are defined in SCSI-2 as "differential").

3.1.27 indication: The second step of a four step confirmed service in reply to a request.

3.1.28 initial connection: An initial connection is the result of a connect. It exists from the assertion of the BSY signal (see 11.1.2) in a SELECTION phase until the next BUS FREE phase.

3.1.29 initiator: An SCSI device containing application clients that originate device service and task management requests to be processed by a target SCSI device. See the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard for a detailed definition of an initiator.

3.1.30 invalid: An illegal or unsupported field or code value.

3.1.31 I_T nexus: A nexus which exists between an initiator and a target.

3.1.32 I_T_L nexus: A nexus which exists between an initiator, a target, and a logical unit. This relationship replaces the prior I_T nexus.

3.1.33 I_T_L_Q nexus: A nexus between an initiator, a target, a logical unit, and a queue tag following the successful receipt of one of the queue tag messages. This relationship replaces the prior I_T_L nexus.

3.1.34 logical unit: An externally addressable entity within a target that implements an SCSI device model. See the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard for a detailed definition of a logical unit.

3.1.35 logical unit number: An identifier for a logical unit.

3.1.36 magnitude: the positive value of a number or quantity, absolute value, size.

3.1.37 mandatory: The referenced item is required to claim compliance with this standard.

3.1.38 megatransfers per second: The repetitive rate at which words of data are transferred across the bus. This is equivalent to megabytes per second on an 8-bit wide bus.

3.1.39 message: One or more bytes transferred between an initiator and a target to do link control, task management, and to attach task attributes to commands.

3.1.40 nexus: A relationship between an initiator and a target that begins with an initial connection and ends with the completion of the associated I/O process.

3.1.41 object: An architectural abstraction that encapsulates data types, services, or other objects that are related in some way.

3.1.42 odd parity: Odd logical parity, where the parity bit is driven and verified to be that value that makes the number of assertions on the associated data byte plus the parity bit equal to an odd number (1, 3, 5, or 7). See 3.1.19, parity bit.

3.1.43 one: A true signal value or a true condition of a variable.

3.1.44 optional: The referenced item is not required to claim compliance with this standard. Implementation of an optional item shall be as defined in this standard.

3.1.45 P cable: A 68-conductor cable that provides the primary 16-bit DATA BUS and control signals.

3.1.46 parity bit: A bit associated with a byte that is used to detect the presence of single-bit errors within the byte. The parity bit is driven such that the number of logical ones in the byte plus the parity bit is odd.

3.1.47 path: the cable, printed circuit board or other means for providing the conductors and insulators that comprise a bus.

3.1.48 pending task: A task that is not the current task.

3.1.49 port: A single attachment to an SCSI bus from an SCSI device.

3.1.50 primary bus: The bus that contains the first 8 or 16 bits of the data and the control signals used to operate SCSI devices.

3.1.51 Q cable: A 68-conductor cable that provides the secondary 16-bit DATA BUS. This cable is used in conjunction with the P cable to provide a 32-bit data path.

3.1.52 queue: The arrangement of tasks within a task set usually according to the temporal order in which they were created.

3.1.53 queue tag: The parameter associated with a task that uniquely identifies it from other tagged tasks for a logical unit from the same initiator.

3.1.54 receiver: the circuitry used to detect the state of the bus.

3.1.55 reconnect: The act of resuming a nexus to continue a task. A target reconnects when conditions are appropriate for the physical bus to transfer data associated with a nexus between an initiator and a target.

3.1.56 reconnection: A reconnection is the result of a reconnect and it exists from the receipt of a selection confirmation with the selection won flag set to one or a reselection confirmation with the reselection won flag set to one until the next bus free indication occurs.

3.1.57 request: A transaction invoking a service.

3.1.58 REQx: A bus signal that is either the REQ or REQQ signal.

3.1.59 reselection ID: The bit-significant representation of the target SCSI address in combination with the initiator SCSI address that is the result of a successful reselection service request.

3.1.60 reserved: Identifies bits, fields, signals, and code values that are set aside for future standardization.

3.1.61 response: The third step of a four set confirmed service in reply to an indication.

3.1.62 SCSI address: The decimal representation of the unique address assigned to an SCSI device.

3.1.63 SCSI device: a device containing at least one SCSI port and the means to connect the drivers and receivers to the bus.

3.1.64 SCSI ID: The bit-significant representation of the SCSI address.

3.1.65 secondary bus: The bus that contains 16 bits of the data and is used in conjunction with a primary bus to create a 32 bit data path.

3.1.66 signal assertion: The act of driving a signal to the true state.

3.1.67 signal negation: The act of performing a signal release or of driving a signal to the false state.

3.1.68 signal release: The act of allowing the cable terminators to bias the signal to the false state (by placing the driver in the high impedance condition).

3.1.69 single-ended (SE): A signalling alternative that employs SE drivers and receivers to increase circuit density (also see 3.1.10, differential).

3.1.70 source (a signal): The act of either signal assertion, signal negation, or signal release.

3.1.71 stub: any electrical path connected to the bus that is not part of the bus path.

3.1.72 stubbed path: Path with stubs attached.

3.1.73 target: An SCSI device that receives SCSI commands and directs such commands to one or more logical units.

3.1.74 task: An object within the logical unit representing the work associated with a command or group of linked commands. A task consists of one initial connection and zero or more reconnections, all pertaining to the task.

3.1.75 task set: A group of tasks within a target device, whose interaction is dependent on the queueing and auto-contingent allegiance rules. See the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard for a detailed definition of a task set.

3.1.76 transceiver: A device that implements both the SCSI bus receiver and driver functions.

3.1.77 upper level protocol: Any application specific protocol executed through services provided by a lower level protocol.

3.1.78 unconfirmed protocol service: A service available at the protocol service interface, that does not result in a completion confirmation.

3.1.79 vendor-specific: Something (i.e., a bit, field, code value, etc.) that is not defined by this standard and may be used differently in various implementations.

3.1.80 word: In this standard this term indicates a 1-byte, 2-byte, or 4-byte construct.

3.1.81 zero: A false signal value or a false condition of a variable.

3.2 Symbols and abbreviations

≠	not equal
≤	less than pr equal to
±	plus or minus
≈	approximately
*	multiply
+	add
-	subtract
<	less than
=	equal
>	greater than
AWG	American wire gauge
CMOS	Complementary metal oxide semiconductor
EMI	Electro-magnetic interference
EMC	Electro-magnetic compatibility
ESD	Electro-static discharge
HVD	High voltage differential
IDC	Insulation displacement contact
LSB	Least significant bit
LUN	Logical unit number
LVD	Low voltage differential
MLVD	Multimode low voltage differential
MSB	Most significant bit
MSE	Multimode single ended
RFI	Radio frequency interface
RIRC	Request indication response confirmation
SCSI	Either SCSI-2 or SCSI-3.
SCSI-2	Small Computer System Interface - 2
SCSI-3	Small Computer System Interface - 3
SDTR	Synchronous data transfer request
SE	Single-ended
WDTR	Wide data transfer request

3.3 Keywords

3.3.1 expected: A keyword used to describe the behavior of the hardware or software in the design models assumed by this standard. Other hardware and software design models may also be implemented.

3.3.2 invalid: A keyword used to describe an illegal or unsupported bit, byte, word, field or code value. Receipt of an invalid bit, byte, word, field or code value shall be reported as error.

3.3.3 mandatory: A keyword indicating an item that is required to be implemented as defined in this standard.

3.3.4 may: A keyword that indicated flexibility of choice with no implied preference.

3.3.5 obsolete: A keyword indicating that an item was defined in prior SCSI standards but has been removed from this standard.

3.3.6 optional: A keyword that describes features that are not required to be implemented by this standard. However, if any optional feature defined by this standards is implemented, then it shall be implemented as defined in this standard.

3.3.7 reserved: A keyword referring to bits, bytes, words, fields and code values that are set aside for future standardization. A reserved bit, byte, word or field shall be set to zero, or in accordance with a future extension to this standard. Recipients may check reserved bits, bytes, words or fields for zero values and report errors if non-zero values are received. Receipt of reserved code values in defined fields shall be reported as error.

3.3.8 shall: A keyword indicating a mandatory requirement. Designers are required to implement all such mandatory requirements to ensure interoperability with other products that conform to this standard.

3.3.9 should: A keyword indicating flexibility of choice with a strongly preferred alternative; equivalent to the phrase "it is strongly recommended".

3.4 Conventions

Certain words and terms used in this American National Standard have a specific meaning beyond the normal English meaning. These words and terms are defined either in 3.1 or in the text where they first appear. Names of signals, phases, messages, commands, statuses, sense keys, additional sense codes, and additional sense code qualifiers are in all uppercase (e.g., REQUEST SENSE), names of fields are in small uppercase (e.g., STATE OF SPARE), lower case is used for words having the normal English meaning.

Fields containing only one bit are usually referred to as the name bit instead of the name field.

Numbers that are not immediately followed by lower-case b or h are decimal values.

Numbers immediately followed by lower-case b (xxb) are binary values.

Numbers immediately followed by lower-case h (xxh) are hexadecimal values.

Decimal numbers are indicated with a comma(e.g., two and one half is represented as 2,5).

Decimal numbers having a value exceeding 999 are represented with a space (e.g., 24 255).

In the event of conflicting information the precedence for requirements defined in this standard is:

1) text,
2) tables, and
3) figures.

3.5 Notation for Procedures and Functions

Procedure Name ([input-1a**|**input-1b**|**inout-1c][,input-2a+input2b]...[input-n]**||**
[output-1][,output-2]...[output -n])

Where:

Procedure Name:	A descriptive name for the function to be performed.
"(...)":	Parentheses enclosing the lists of input and output arguments.
input-1, input-2, ...:	A comma-separated list of names identifying caller-supplied input data objects.
output-1, output-2, ...:	A comma-separated list of names identifying output data objects to be returned by the procedure.
"**||**":	A separator providing the demarcation between inputs and outputs. Inputs are listed to the left of the separator; outputs, if any, are listed to the right.
"[...]":	Brackets enclosing optional or conditional parameters and arguments.
"**|**":	A separator providing the demarcation between a number of arguments of which only one shall be used in any single procedure.
"+":	A collection of objects presented to a single object. No ordering is implied.

4 General

4.1 Overview

The SCSI Parallel Interface-2 Standard defines the cables, connectors, signals, transceivers, and protocol used to interconnect SCSI devices and the services provided to the application client.

4.1.1 Cables, Connectors, Signals, Transceivers

SCSI parallel interface devices default to 8-bit asynchronous transfer. The 8-bit asynchronous information transfer mode is always used for all information transfers except DATA-IN phases and DATA-OUT phases. DATA-IN phases and DATA-OUT phases may use asynchronous or synchronous transfers that can be 8-bits, 16-bits or 32-bits wide, if a synchronous transfer agreement or a wide transfer agreement is in effect. SCSI parallel interface devices may be implemented with either 50, 68, or 80 pin connectors.

Table 1 defines the bus modes and transfer rates supported with the various transceivers defined within this standard.

Table 1 - Transceiver/speed support map

Transceiver	Maximum transfer rate				
	Asynchronous	**Fast-5**	**Fast-10**	**Fast-20**	**Fast-40**
SE	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
MSE (Note)	yes	yes	yes	yes	no
LVD	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
HVD	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Key: yes = Transceiver/speed combination supported by this standard. No =Transceiver/speed combination not supported by this standard.					
Note-MSE is identical to SE except for some input voltage requirements on certain connector positions (see table 22).					

SCSI devices may connect to the bus via 8 bit, 16 bit, or 32 bit ports. The 8 bit and 16 bit ports shall connect to a primary bus that consists of an A cable or P cable via a single connector. The 32 bit port shall connect to a primary bus that consists of a P cable and a secondary bus that consists of a Q cable via two connectors; one to a P cable and the other to a Q cable. (see 5)

4.1.2 Physical architecture of bus

The position of the drivers, receivers, and terminators for a SE bus are shown in figure 3 and for a deferential bus are shown in figure 2. The electrical properties of the drivers and receivers are all measured at the stub connections. Unless otherwise noted, all voltages are with respect to the signal. ground of the SCSI device

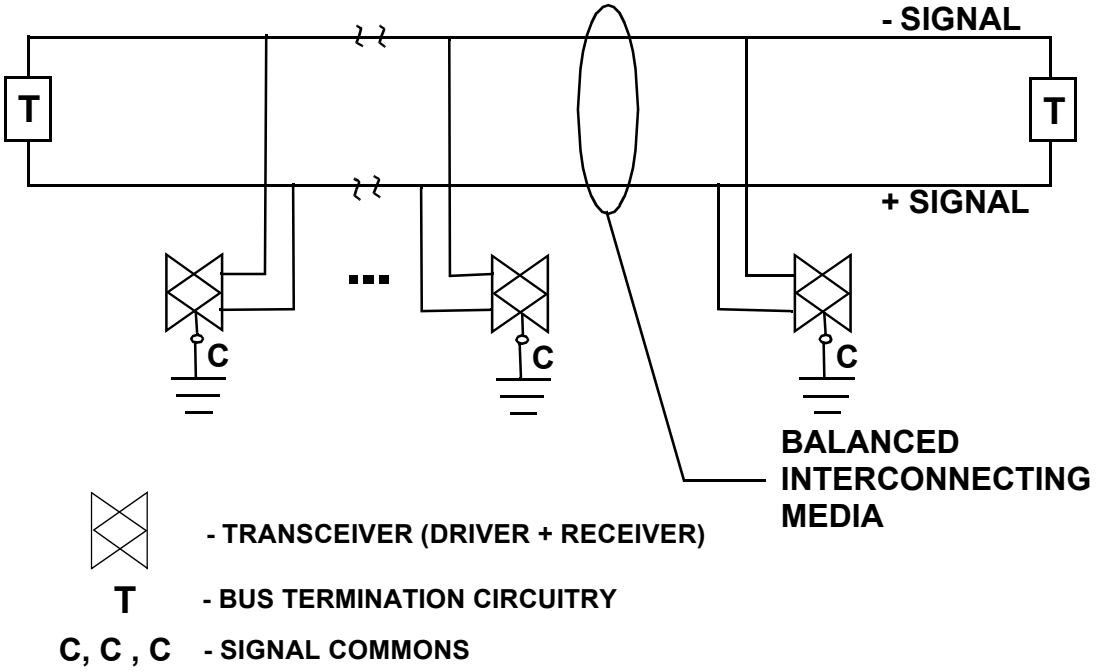


Figure 2 - Differential SCSI bus

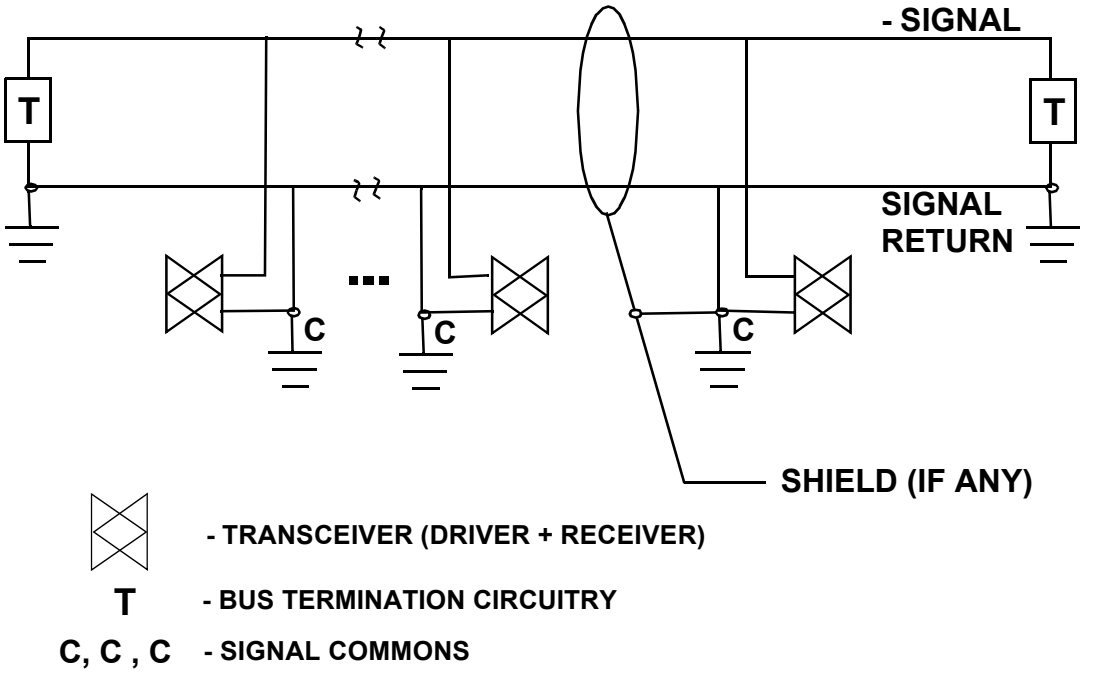


Figure 3 - SE SCSI bus

4.1.3 Physical topology details and definitions

The SCSI bus is a multidrop architecture described in 4.1.2. Other details important to ensure the proper operation of this topology are described in this subclause.

The statements in this section apply to SE, LVD, and HVD busses.

The SCSI bus consists of all the conductors and connectors required to attain signal line continuity between every driver, receiver, and terminator for each signal. The electrical connection directly between the two terminators forms the bus-path. Any electrical path that is not part of the bus-path is a stub. The point where a stub meets the bus-path is termed the stub connection.

SCSI bus connectors are any connector used to create the SCSI bus. SCSI bus connectors shall be defined by their function and by their physical placement.

The functional definitions are:

a) connectors used to provide part of the bus-path are bus-path connectors, and
b) connectors used to provide part of a stub are stub connectors.

Common physical placement descriptions are:

a) connectors physically part of SCSI devices are device connectors,
b) connectors physically part of cables, backplanes, or other non-device conductors are cable connectors,
c) connectors physically part of terminators are terminator connectors,
d) connectors physically part of enclosures are enclosure connectors, and
e) other physical placement descriptions may be used.

SCSI bus connectors referred to in this standard use both the functional definition and a physical description (e.g. device stub connector, terminator bus path connector).

The mating interface of stub connectors is considered to be the stub connection if the path between the true stub connection and the mating interface is contained wholly within the connector housing. Such connectors are termed housing-only connectors.

Figure 4 shows examples of connectors, bus paths, stubs, and stub connections.

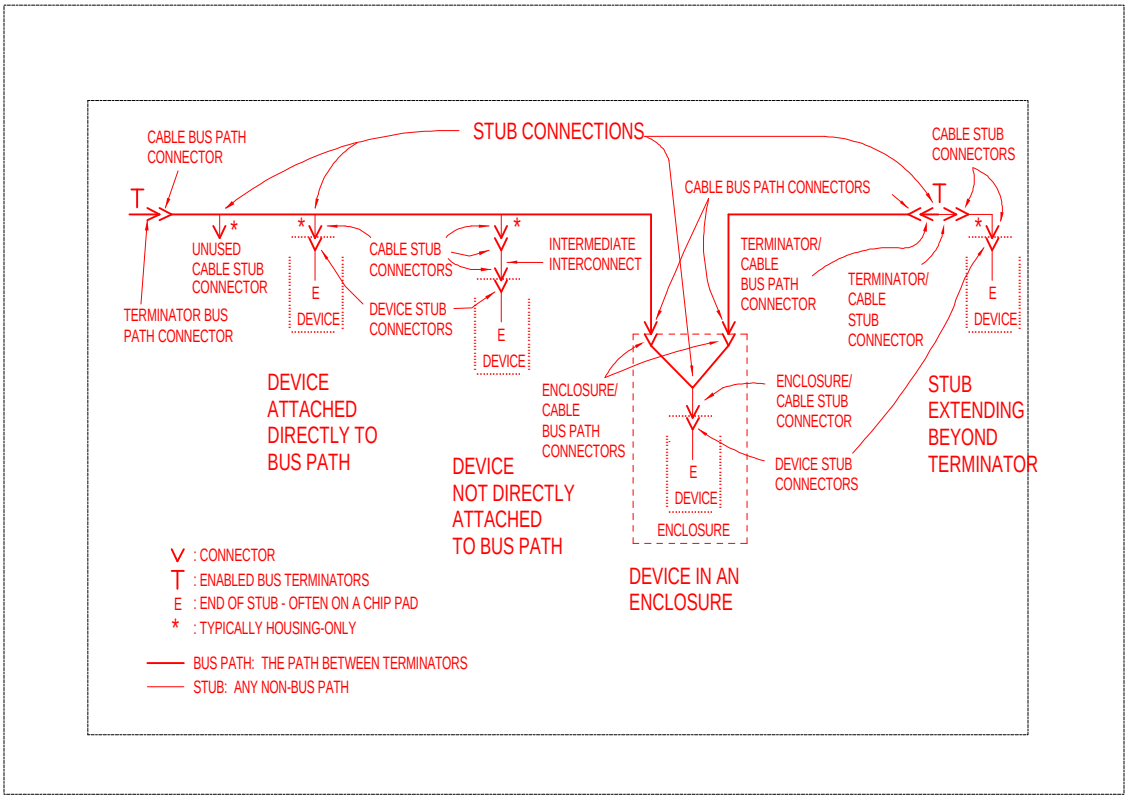


Figure 4 - SCSI bus topology details

This standard continues the practice of ignoring the effects of housing-only stub connectors with no device or intermediate interconnect attached since the stub length, leakage and capacitance is very small. It also ignores the effects of bus-path connectors for the same reason.

For devices that are attached to the bus path with housing-only stub connectors the contribution of the housing-only connector to the stub and load is ignored. In this case the stub begins with the device stub connector. If one adds an intermediate interconnection to connect the device to the bus path this additional interconnect (including its connectors) and the device all contribute to the stub and loading. This requires that the performance at the device connector be better than the minimum requirements for stub connections.

NOTE 2 - Extending the connection beyond the terminator as shown in the right side of also produces stubs and loading.

4.1.4 Bus loading

Bus loading is the electrical current flowing through the stub connection for devices that are not driving the bus. The bus termination circuitry also provides bus loading. Bus loading shall appear capacitive to A.C.signals and may also have a D.C. leakage component. The stub capacitance is caused by electrical paths and components within the stub. The leakage is caused by imperfect insulation of + and - signals and by components attached to the paths within the stub. The capacitive current loading is specified by the value of the capacitances at the + and - signals rather than by the value of the current.

Bus termination circuitry bus loading is the capacitance measured at the terminator bus-path connector. Any D.C. leakage within enabled terminators is part of the performance requirements in and does not constitute bus loading.

Bus termination loading is separate from device loading. Devices containing enabled bus termination shall present maximum loading at the stub connection that is the sum of the maximum allowed termination loading and the maximum allowed device loading. See 4.1.5 for requirements of disabled termination circuitry.

For stub connections within an allowed stub length from enabled bus termination circuitry, the maximum bus loading allowed is the sum of the maximum bus termination loading and the maximum stub loading. This sum is denoted as $LMAX_{dev+term}$. If either the bus termination loading or the stub loading is less than the maximum allowed, the other entity may increase its loading as long as the total for both entities does not exceed $LMAX_{dev+term}$.

4.1.5 Termination requirements

The SCSI bus termination defines the ends of the SCSI bus. Bus termination is required to set the negation state when no device is driving (also called biasing) and to match the impedance to that of the interconnect media. A termination circuit is providing bus termination only when it is delivering the performance requirements for biasing and impedance matching. Such a termination circuit is said to be enabled when it is providing the bus termination.

Terminator circuits may also be in a disabled state where they are not providing any of the essential termination functions of bias or impedance matching. One way of disabling a terminator is to disconnect all the signal lines (including DIFFSENS if desired) by an electronic switch. Such a terminator circuit is called a switchable terminator.

Disabled terminators count as devices in terms of bus loading if they are individually attached to the bus. If they are contained within a device the disabled terminators become part of the device load budget for that device.

4.1.6 Target Addressing

The number of targets that may be addressed depends on the width of the data path on the bus; an 8 bit data path allows up to 8 targets to be addressed, a 16 bit data path allows up to 16 targets to be addressed, and a 32 bit data path allows up to 32 targets to be addressed. However, the number of targets that may be connected to the bus is dependent on several factors (e.g., bus length, data transfer rates, capacitance loading of the SCSI device, etc.) that are described throughout this standard.

4.1.7 Protocol

This standard describes a device's behavior in terms of function levels, service interfaces between levels and peer-to-peer protocols. For a full description of the model used in this standard see the SCSI Architecture Model-2 Standard. Figure 5 shows the model as to appears from the point of view of the this standard.

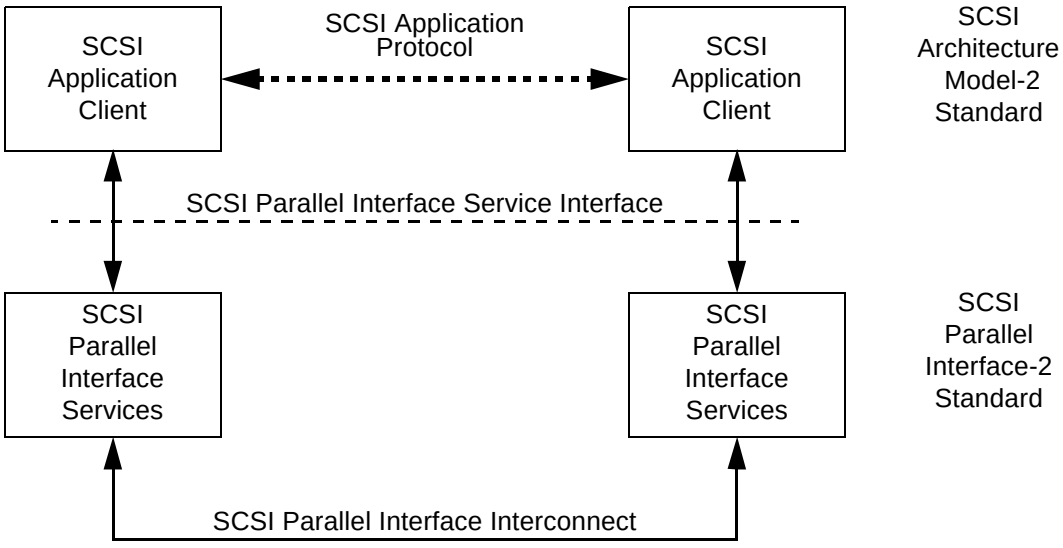


Figure 5 - SCSI Parallel Interface service reference mode

Services between service levels are either four step confirmed services or two step confirmed services. A four step confirmed service consists of a service request, indication, response, and confirmation. A two step confirmed service consists of a service request and confirmation.

Figure 6 shows the service and protocol interactions for a four step confirmed service.

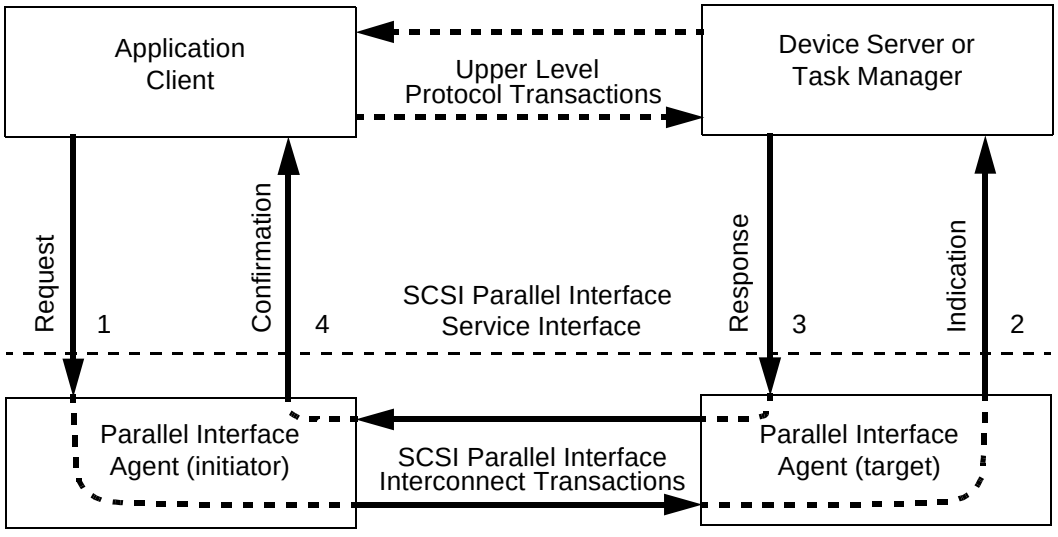


Figure 6 - Model for a four step confirmed services

The SCSI parallel interface service interface consists of the following interactions:

a) A request to the initiator parallel interface agent to invoke a service;
b) An indication from the target parallel interface agent notifying the device server or task manager of an event;
c) A response from the device server or task manager in reply to an indication;

d) A confirmation from the initiator parallel agent upon service completion.

Only application clients shall request a four step confirmed service be invoked.

Figure 7 shows the service and protocol interactions for a two step confirmed service.

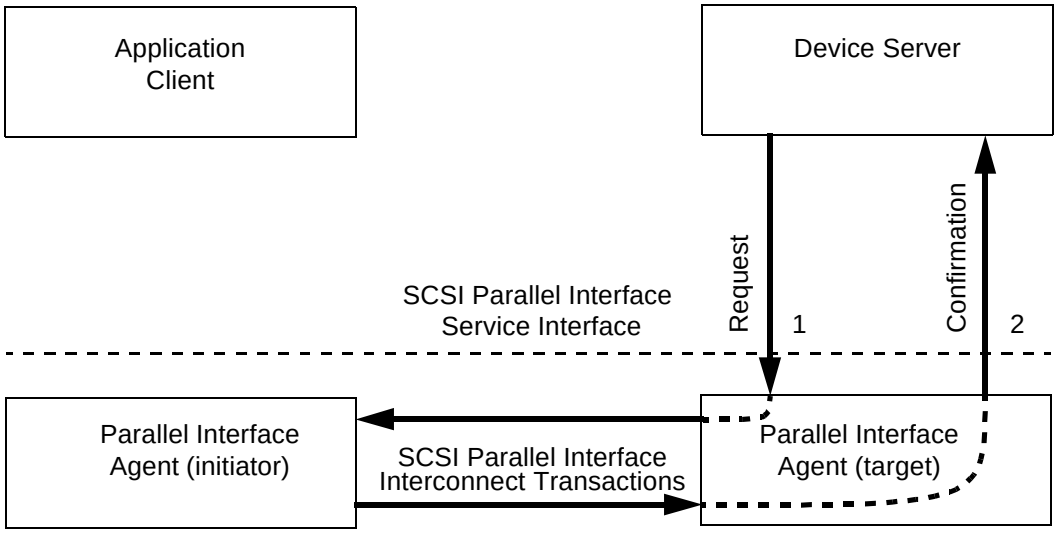


Figure 7 - Model for a two step confirmed services

The SCSI parallel interface service interface consists of the following interactions:

a) A request to the target parallel interface agent to invoke a service;
b) A confirmation from the target parallel interface agent upon service completion.

Only device servers shall request a two step confirmed service be invoked.

5 SCSI parallel interface connectors

Two types of connectors are defined: nonshielded and shielded. The nonshielded connectors are typically used within an enclosure. The shielded connectors are typically used for external applications where electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and electrostatic discharge (ESD) protection may be required. Either type of connector may be used with the single-ended or differential transceivers.

The connector shall be a multi-wipe design with contact geometry and normal force sufficient to pass the following test:

a) Measure contact resistances of the connectors being evaluated using a test procedure for low-level contact resistance. Use EIA 364-23A (low-level contact resistance test procedure for electronic connectors) as a reference procedure. Record measurements as initial contact resistances;
b) Mate and unmate connectors 50 cycles;
c) Contact resistance is measured in accordance with item a) above (this is an optional step);
d) Expose mated connectors to mixed flowing gas consisting of 10 parts per billion (ppb) of chlorine, 10 ppb of hydrogen sulfide, 200 ppb of sulfur dioxide, and 200 ppb of nitrogen dioxide for 20 days at 70% relative humidity and 30^{o}C. Use ASTM B827 (standard practice for conducting mixed flowing gas environmental tests) as a reference procedure;
e) Remove connectors from the mixed flowing gas, remeasure contact resistance in accordance with item a) above, Any contact with an increase of 15 milliohms or greater is a failure.

The resistance shall be measured using a four-point dry-circuit method directly across the mated contact.

5.1 Nonshielded connector

Two nonshielded connector alternatives are specified for the A cable, two non-shielded connector alternatives are specified for the P cable, and one non-shielded connector is specified for the Q cable.

5.1.1 Nonshielded connector alternative 1 - A cable

The alternative 1 nonshielded SCSI device connector for the A cable shall be a 50-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 25 female contacts with adjacent contacts 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 8. The nonmating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

The alternative 1 nonshielded mating connector for the A cable shall be a 50-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 25 male contacts with adjacent contacts 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 9. The nonmating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

5.1.2 Nonshielded connector alternative 2 - A cable

The alternative 2 nonshielded SCSI device connector for the A cable shall be a 50-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 25 male contacts with adjacent contacts 2,54 mm (0,1 in) apart as shown in figure 10. A shroud and header body should be used. The non-mating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

The alternative 2 nonshielded mating connector for the A cable shall be a 50-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 25 female contacts with adjacent contacts 2,54 mm (0,1 in) apart as shown in figure 11. It is recommended that keyed connectors be used.

5.1.3 Nonshielded connector alternative 3 - P cable and Q cable

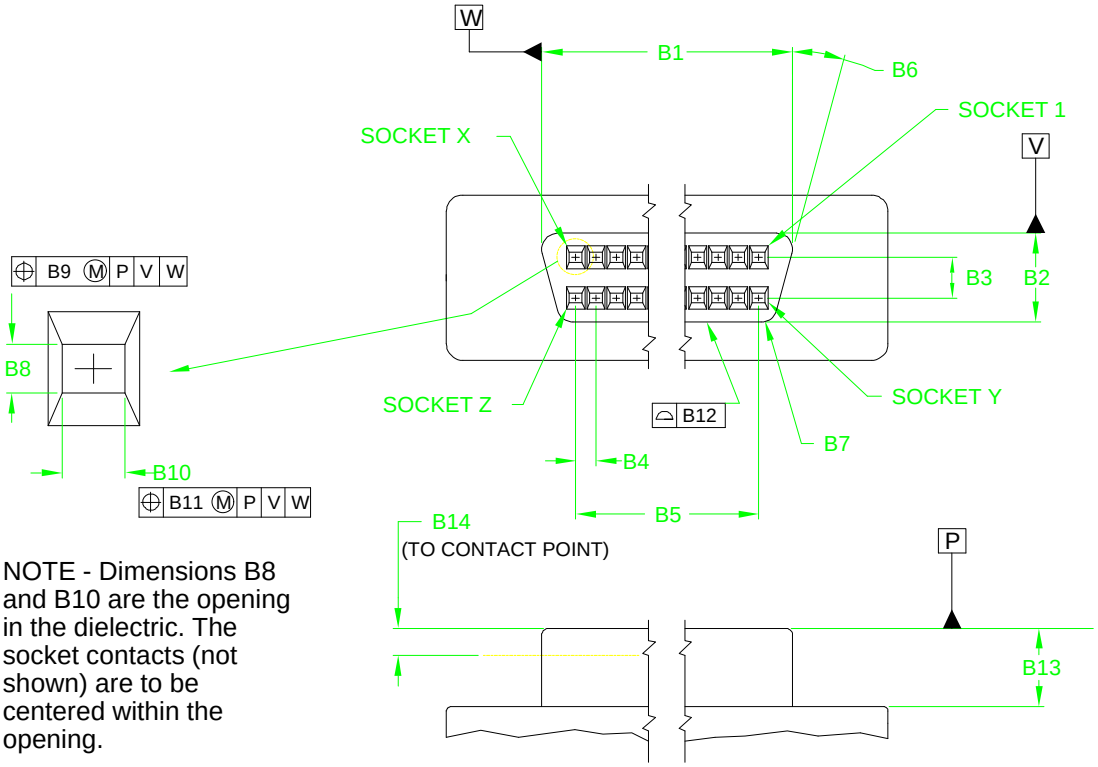
The alternative 3 nonshielded SCSI device connector for the P cable and Q cable shall be a 68-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 34 female contacts with adjacent contacts 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 8. The nonmating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

The alternative 3 nonshielded mating connector for the P cable and Q cable shall be a 68-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 34 male contacts with adjacent contacts 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 9. The nonmating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

5.1.4 Nonshielded connector alternative 4 - P cable

The alternative 4 nonshielded SCSI device connector for the P cable shall be a 80-conductor connector consisting of two rows of ribbon contacts spaced 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 12 and figure 13. For the detailed dimensional drawings of this connector see the SCA-2 EIA specification ANSI/EIA PN-3651.

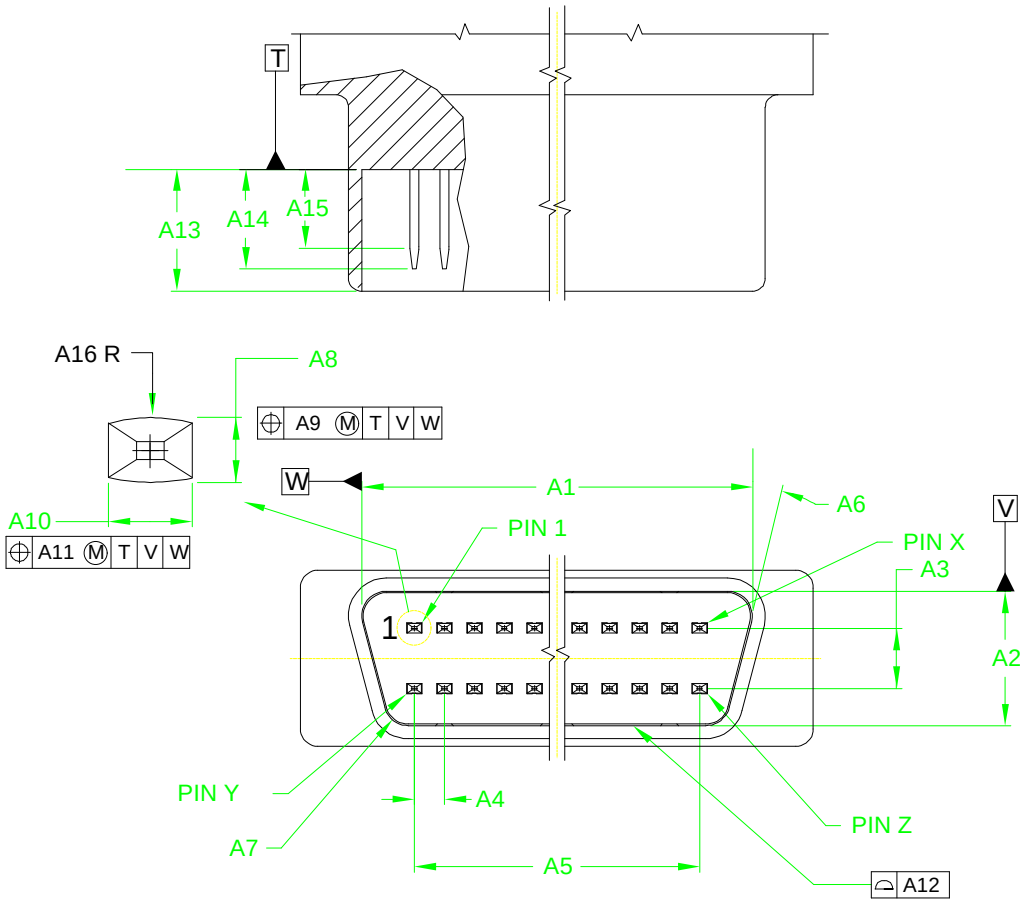
The alternative 4 nonshielded mating connector for the P cable shall be a 80-conductor connector consisting of two rows of ribbon contacts spaced 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 12 and figure 13. For the detailed dimensional drawings of this connector see the SCA-2 EIA specification ANSI/EIA PN-3651.



NOTE - Dimensions B8 and B10 are the opening in the dielectric. The socket contacts (not shown) are to be centered within the opening.

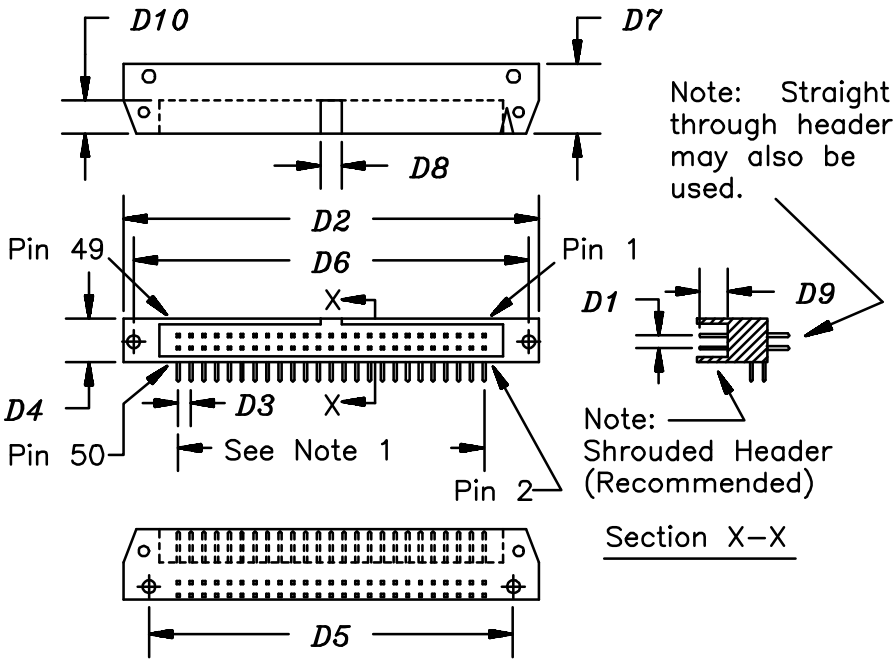
Dimensions	50 Position		68 Position	
	Millimeters	Inches	Millimeters	Inches
B1	34,70	1,366	46,13	1,816
B2	5,54	0,218	5,54	0,218
B3	2,54	0,100	2,54	0,100
B4	1,27	0,050	1,27	0,050
B5	30,48	1,200	41,91	1,650
B6	15°	15°	15°	15°
B7	1,00 R	0,039 R	1,00 R	0,039 R
B8	0,61±0,05	0,024±0,002	0,61±0,05	0,024±0,002
B9	0,15	0,006	0,15	0,006
B10	0,86±0,10	0,034±0,004	0,86±0,10	0,034±0,004
B11	0,15	0,006	0,15	0,006
B12	0,05	0,002	0,05	0,002
B13	5,00±0,13	0,197±0,005	5,00±0,13	0,197±0,005
B14	1,75 MAX	0,069 MAX	1,75 MAX	0,069 MAX
SOCKET X	25		34	
SOCKET Y	26		35	
SOCKET Z	50		68	

Figure 8 - 50/68-contact alternative 1/alternative 3 nonshielded SCSI device connector
(A cable/P cable/Q cable)



Dimensions	50 Position		68 Position	
	Millimeters	Inches	Millimeters	Inches
A1	34,85	1,372	46,28	1,822
A2	5,69	0,224	5,69	0,224
A3	2,54	0,100	2,54	0,100
A4	1,27	0,050	1,27	0,050
A5	30,48	1,200	41,91	1,650
A6	15	15 °	15	15 °
A7	1,04 R	0,041 R	1,04 R	0,041 R
A8	0,396±0,010	0,0156±0,0004	0,396±0,010	0,0156±0,0004
A9	0,23	0,009	0,23	0,009
A10	0,61±0,03	0,024±0,001	0,61±0,03	0,024±0,001
A11	0,23	0,009	0,23	0,009
A12	0,05	0,002	0,05	0,002
A13	5,16±0,15	0,203±0,006	5,16±0,15	0,203±0,006
A14	4,39 MAX	0,173 MAX	4,39 MAX	0,173 MAX
A15	3,02 MIN	0,119 MIN	3,02 MIN	0,119 MIN
A16	1,02±0,25	0,040±0,010	1,02±0,25	0,040±0,010
PIN X	25		34	
PIN Y	26		35	
PIN Z	50		68	

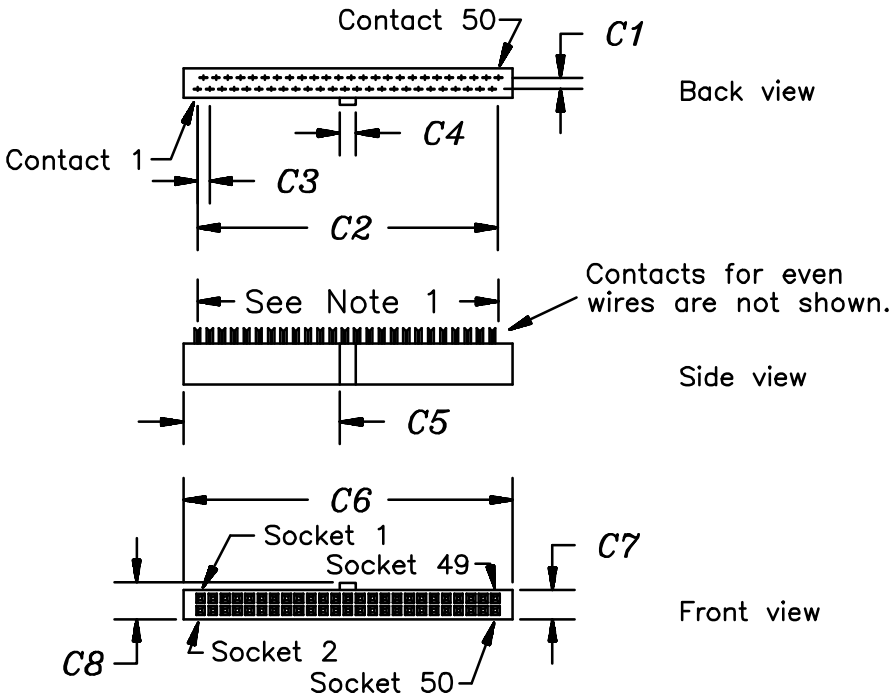
Figure 9 - 50/68-contact alternative 1/alternative 3 nonshielded mating connector
(A cable/P cable/Q cable)



Dimension	mm	in	Comments
D1	2,54	0,100	
D2	82,80	3,260	Reference Only
D3	2,54	0,100	
D4	8,89	0,350	Reference Only
D5	72,64	2,860	Reference Only
D6	78,74	3,100	Reference Only
D7	13,94	0,549	Reference Only
D8	4,19± 0,25	0,165± 0,010	
D9	6,09	0,240	
D10	6,60	0,260	Reference Only

NOTES
1 Two rows of twenty five contacts on 2,540 mm (0,100 in) spacing = 60,960 mm (2,400 in).
2 Tolerances ±0,127 mm (0,005 in) non–cumulative, unless specified otherwise.

Figure 10 - 50-contact alternative 2 nonshielded SCSI device connector (A cable)



Dimensions	mm	in	Comments
C1	2,54	0,100	
C2	60,96	2,400	
C3	2,54	0,100	
C4	3,30	0,130	
C5	32,38	1,275	
C6	68,07	2,680	
C7	6,10	0,240	
C8	7,62	0,300	Maximum

NOTES
1 Fifty contacts on 1,270 mm (0,050 in) staggered spacing = 62,230 mm (2,450 in) [reference only].
2 Tolerances ±0,127 mm (0,005) non–cumulative, unless specified otherwise.
3 Connector cover and strain relief are optional.

Figure 11 - 50-contact alternative 2 nonshielded mating connector (A cable)

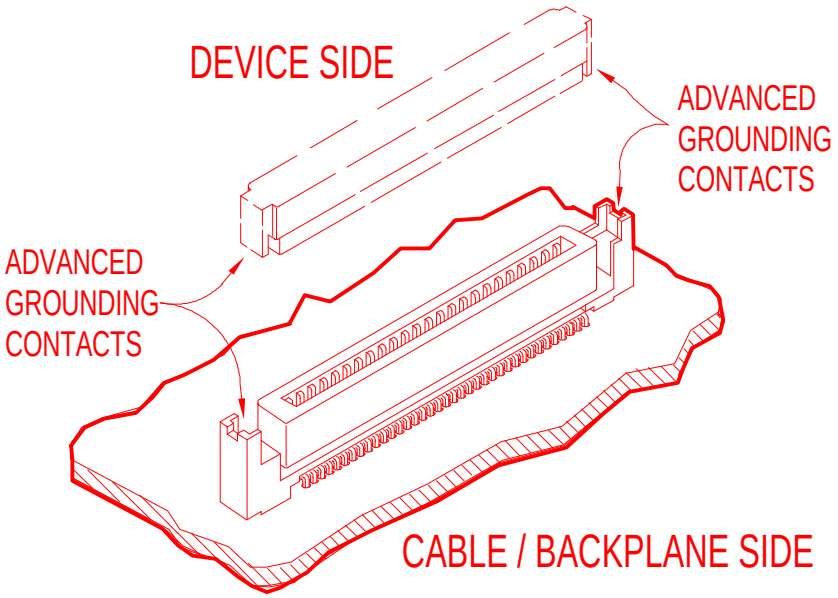


Figure 12 - 80-contact alternative 4 nonshielded SCSI device connector (P cable)

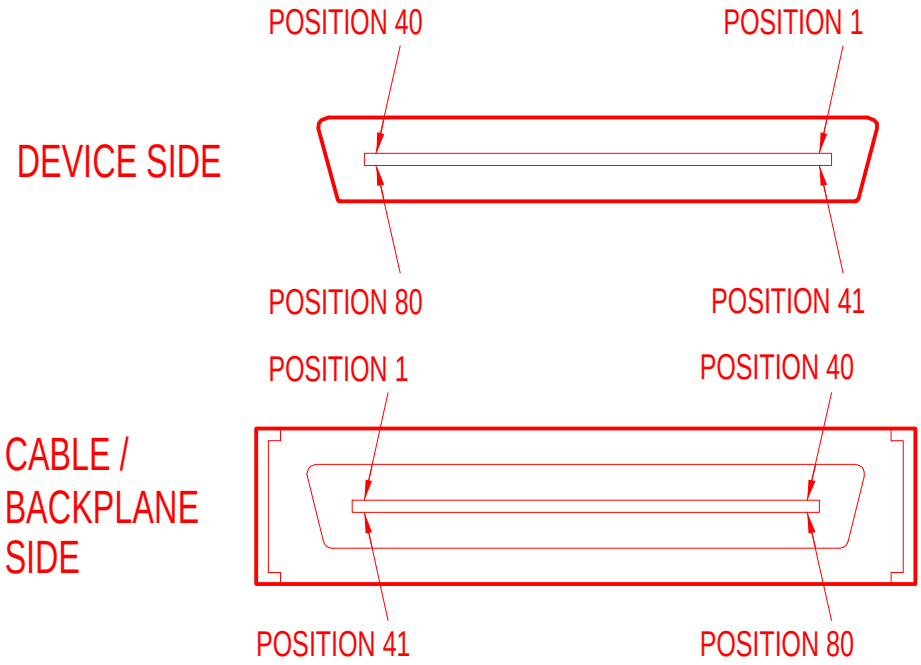


Figure 13 - 80-contact alternative 4 nonshielded contact positions (P cable)

5.2 Shielded connector

Two shielded connector alternatives are specified for the A cable, the P cable, and the Q cable.

The D.C. resistance from the cable shield where it attaches to the connector to the enclosure should be less than 10 milliohms.

NOTE 3 - In order to support daisy-chain connections, SCSI devices that use shielded connectors should

provide two shielded device connectors on the device enclosure. Inside the enclosure the cable should be looped from one shielded connector to the other. The loop passes the connecting point to the transceivers within the enclosure in such a manner that stub lengths are minimized. The length of the cable within the device enclosure is included when calculating the total cable length of the SCSI bus. (see figure 4)

5.2.1 Shielded connector alternative 1 - A cable

The alternative 1 shielded SCSI-3 device connector for the A cable shall be a 50-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 25 female contacts with adjacent contacts 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 14. The nonmating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

The alternative 1 shielded mating connector for the A cable shall be a 50-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 25 male contacts with adjacent contacts 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 15. The nonmating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

5.2.2 Shielded connector alternative 2 - A cable

The alternative 2 shielded SCSI-3 device connector for the A cable shall be a 50-conductor connector consisting of two rows of ribbon contacts spaced 2,16 mm (0,085 in) apart, as shown in figure 16. The non-mating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

The alternative 2 shielded mating connector for the A cable shall be a 50-conductor connector consisting of two rows of ribbon contacts spaced 2,16 mm (0,085 in) apart, as shown in figure 17. The non-mating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

5.2.3 Shielded connector alternative 3 - P cable and Q cable

The alternative 3 shielded SCSI-3 device connector for the P cable and Q cable shall be a 68-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 34 female contacts with adjacent contacts 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 18. The nonmating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

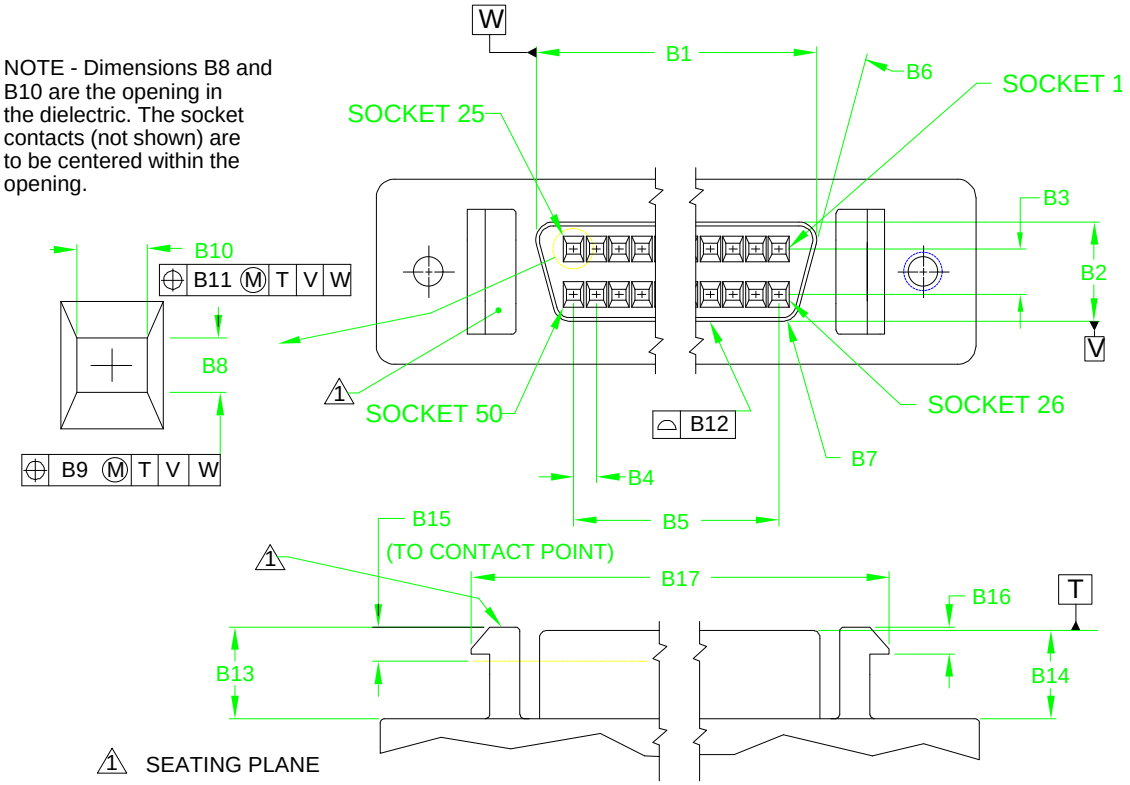
The alternative 3 shielded mating connector for the P cable and Q cable shall be a 68-conductor connector consisting of two rows of 34 male contacts with adjacent contacts 1,27 mm (0,05 in) apart, as shown in figure 19. The nonmating portion of the connector is shown for reference only.

Cable retention shall consist of #2-56 thread jack screws capable of withstanding a minimum torque of 1.2 Nm (11 inch-pounds).

5.2.4 Shielded connector alternative 4 - P cable and Q cable

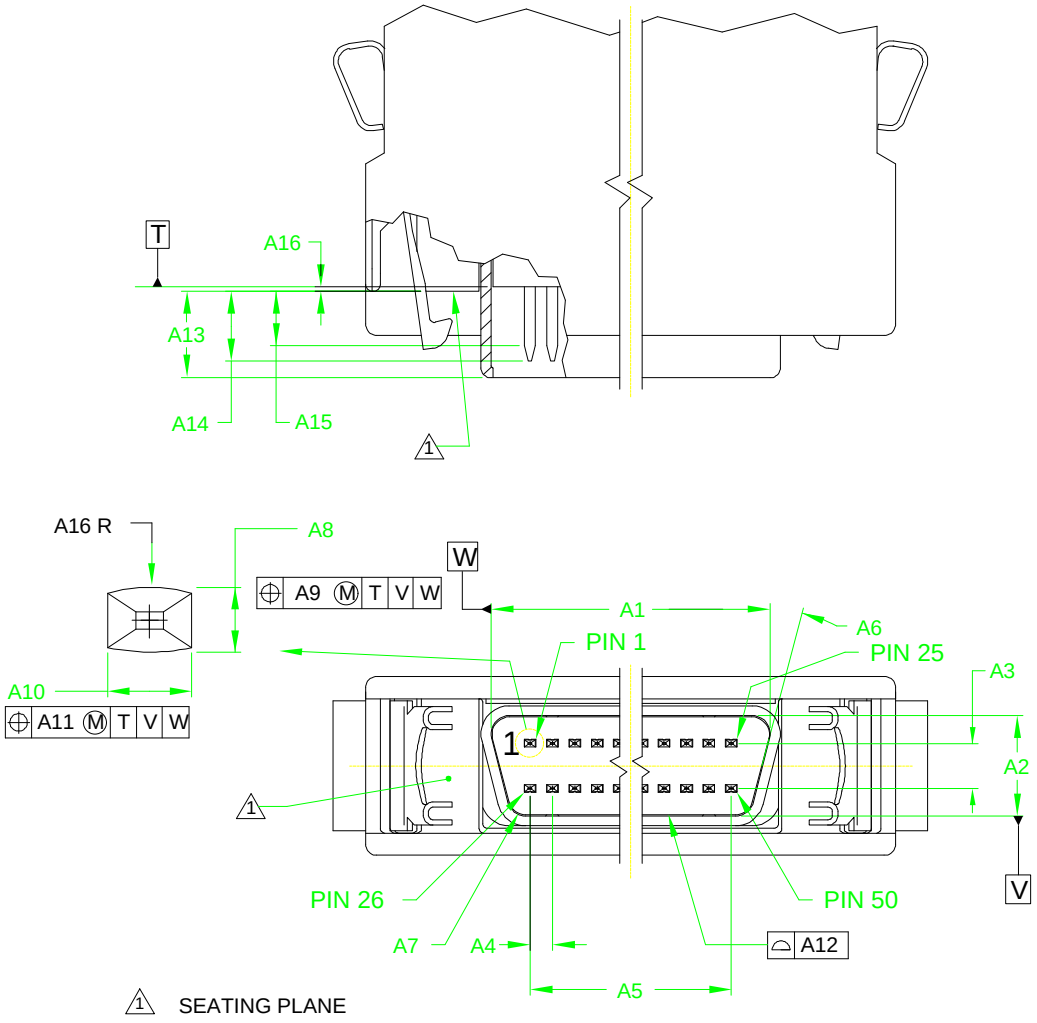
The alternative 4 shielded SCSI device connector for the P cable and Q cable shall be a 68-conductor connector consisting of two rows of ribbon contacts spaced 0,8mm (0,0315 in) apart, as shown in figure 20 and figure 21. For the detailed dimensional drawings of this connector see the VHDCI EIA specification ANSI/EIA PN-3652.

The alternative 4 shielded mating connector for the P cable and Q cable shall be a 68-conductor connector consisting of two rows of ribbon contacts spaced 0,8mm (0,0315 in) apart, as shown in figure 20 and figure 21. For the detailed dimensional drawings of this connector see the VHDCI EIA specification ANSI/EIA PN-3652.



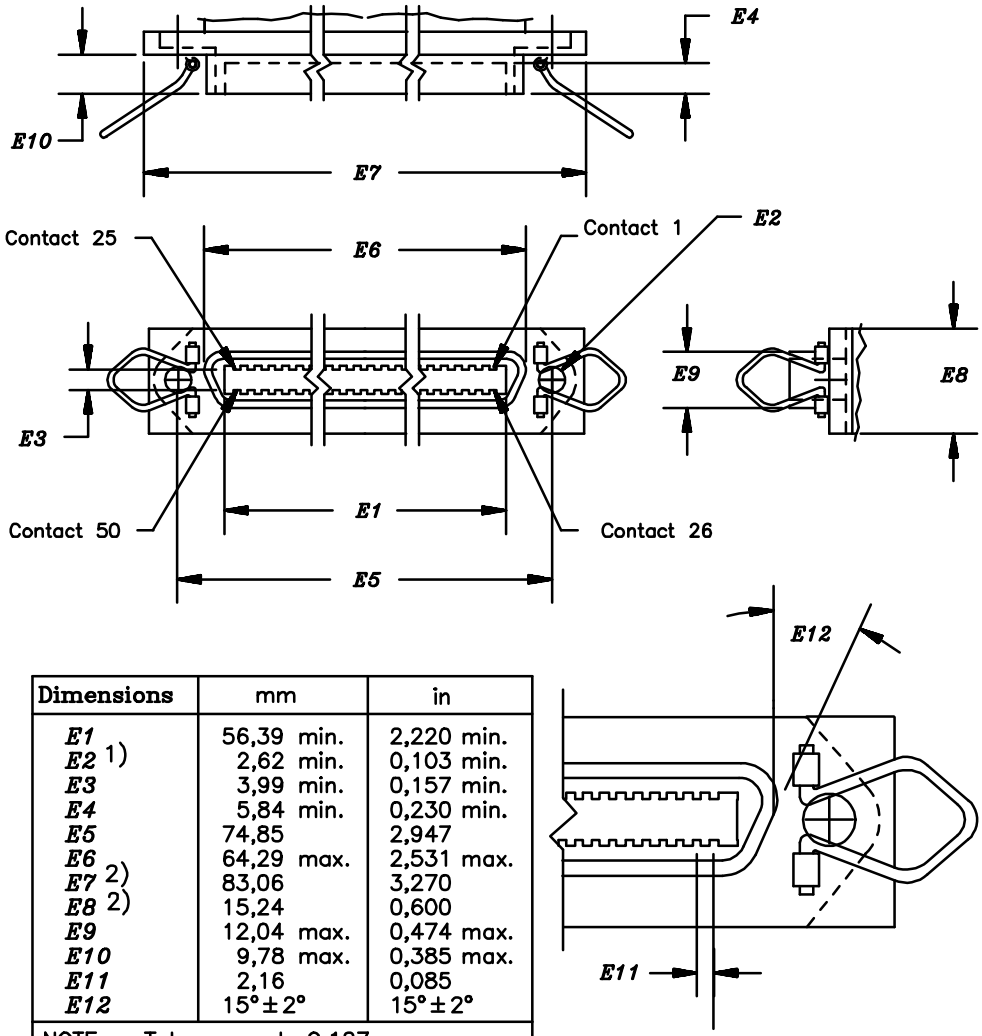
Dimensions	Millimeters	Inches
B1	34,70	1,366
B2	5,54	0,218
B3	2,54	0,100
B4	1,27	0,050
B5	30,48	1,200
B6	15°	15°
B7	1,00 R	0,039 R
B8	0,61±0,05	0,024±0,002
B9	0,15	0,006
B10	0,86±0,10	0,034±0,004
B11	0,15	0,006
B12	0,05	0,002
B13	5,10±0,05	0,201±0,002
B14	5,00±0,13	0,197±0,005
B15	1,85 max.	0,073 max.
B16	1,50±0,03	0,059±0,001
B17	42,29±0,10	1,665±0,004

Figure 14 - 50-contact alternative 1 shielded SCSI device connector (A cable)



Dimensions	Millimeters	Inches
A1	34,85	1,372
A2	5,69	0,224
A3	2,54	0,100
A4	1,27	0,050
A5	30,48	1,200
A6	15	15
A7	1,04 R	0,041 R
A8	0,40±0,010	0,0156±0,0004
A9	0,23	0,009
A10	0,60±0,03	0,024±0,001
A11	0,23	0,009
A12	0,05	0,002
A13	4,90±0,10	0,193±0,004
A14	4,27 max.	0,168 max.
A15	2,64 min.	0,104 min.
A16	0,25±0,13	0,010±0,005

Figure 15 - 50-contact alternative 1 shielded mating connector (A cable)

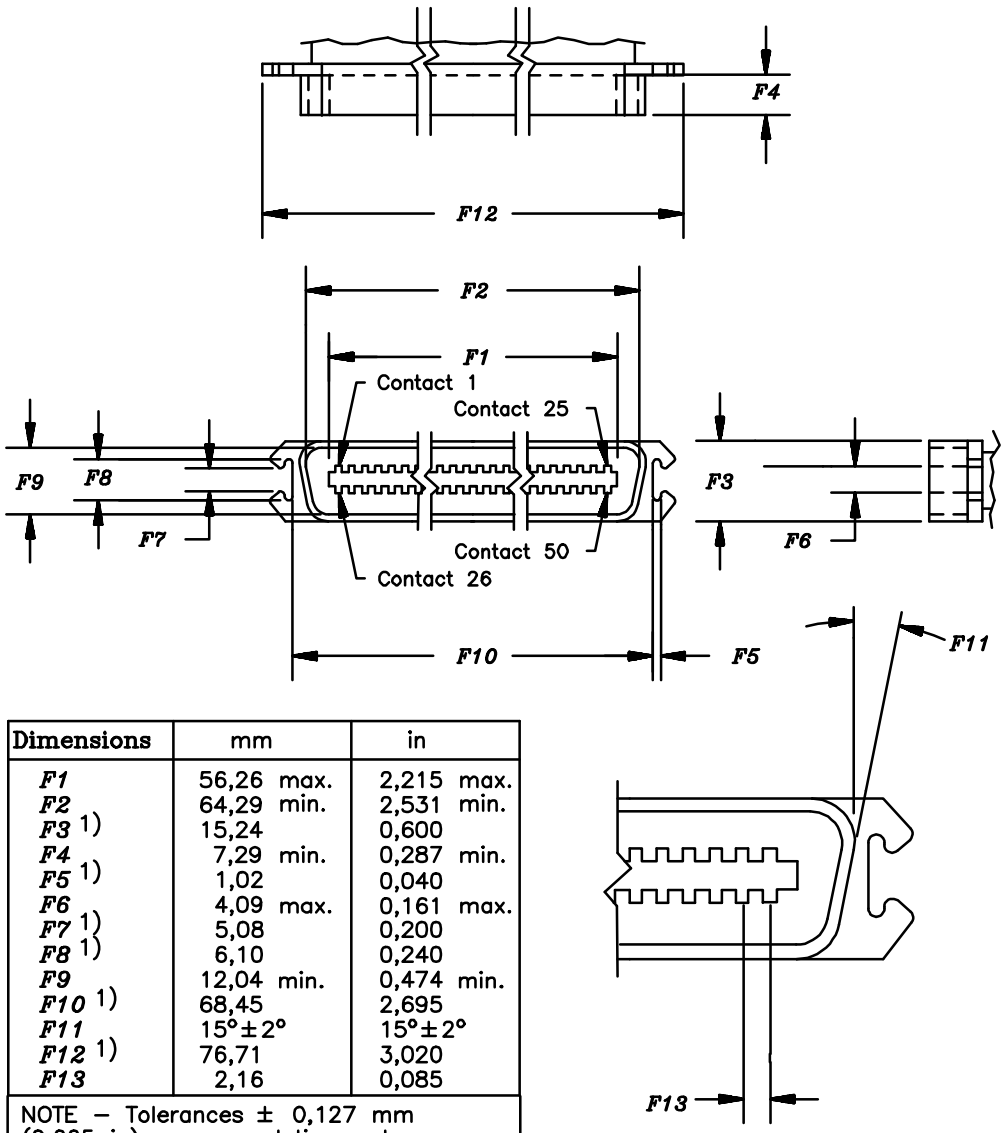


Dimensions	mm	in
E1	56,39 min.	2,220 min.
E2 1)	2,62 min.	0,103 min.
E3	3,99 min.	0,157 min.
E4	5,84 min.	0,230 min.
E5	74,85	2,947
E6	64,29 max.	2,531 max.
E7 2)	83,06	3,270
E8 2)	15,24	0,600
E9	12,04 max.	0,474 max.
E10	9,78 max.	0,385 max.
E11	2,16	0,085
E12	15°±2°	15°±2°

NOTE – Tolerances ± 0,127 mm (0,005 in) non–cumulative, unless specified otherwise.

1) This dimension is selected to accomodate 4–40 or 6–32 threaded screws.
2) These dimensions are shown for reference only.

Figure 16 - 50-contact alternative 2 shielded SCSI device connector (A cable)

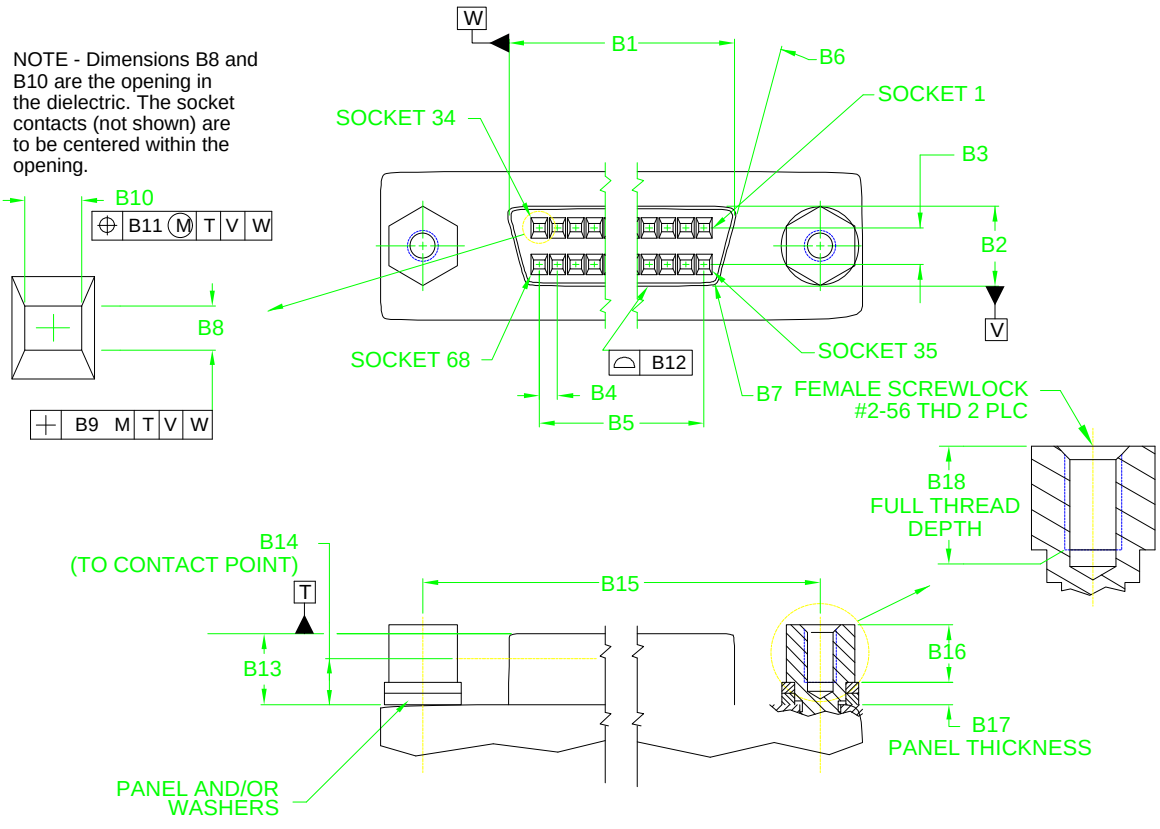


Dimensions	mm	in
F1	56,26 max.	2,215 max.
F2	64,29 min.	2,531 min.
F3 1)	15,24	0,600
F4	7,29 min.	0,287 min.
F5 1)	1,02	0,040
F6	4,09 max.	0,161 max.
F7 1)	5,08	0,200
F8 1)	6,10	0,240
F9	12,04 min.	0,474 min.
F10 1)	68,45	2,695
F11	15°±2°	15°±2°
F12 1)	76,71	3,020
F13	2,16	0,085

NOTE – Tolerances ± 0,127 mm (0,005 in) non–cumulative, unless specified otherwise.

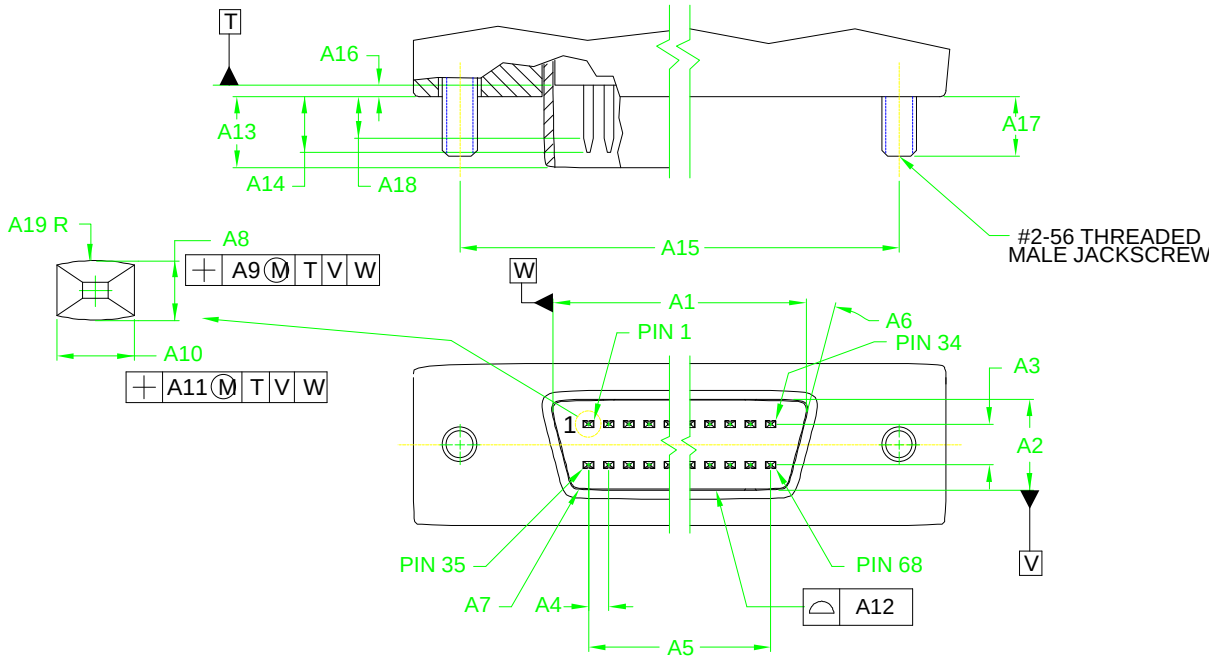
1) These dimensions are shown for reference only.

Figure 17 - 50-contact alternative 2 shielded mating connector (A cable)



Dimensions	Millimeters	Inches
B1	46,13	1,816
B2	5,54	0,218
B3	2,54	0,100
B4	1,27	0,050
B5	41,91	1,650
B6	15	15
B7	1,00 R	0,039 R
B8	0,61±0,05	0,024±0,002
B9	0,15	0,006
B10	0,86±0,10	0,034±0,004
B11	0,15	0,006
B12	0,05	0,002
B13	5,00±0,13	0,197±0,005
B14	3,30 min.	0,130 min.
B15	57,91±0,13	2,280±0,005
B16	3,71±0,05	0,146±0,002
B17	1,52±0.13	0,060±0,005
B18	3,58 min.	0,141 min.

Figure 18 - 68-contact alternative 3 shielded SCSI device connector (P cable/Q cable)



Dimensions	Millimeters	Inches
A1	46,28	1,822
A2	5,69	0,224
A3	2,54	0,100
A4	1,27	0,050
A5	41,91	1,650
A6	15°	15°
A7	1,04 R	0,041 R
A8	0,396±0,010	0,0156±0,0004
A9	0,23	0,009
A10	0,60±0,03	0,024±0,001
A11	0,23	0,009
A12	0,05	0,002
A13	4,90±0,10	0,193±0,004
A14	4,27 max.	0,168 max.
A15	57,91±0,13	2,280±0,005
A16	0,25±0,13	0,010±0,005
A17	3,43±0,15	0,135±0,006
A18	2,64 min.	0,104 min.
A19	1,02±0,25	0,040±0,010

Figure 19 - 68-contact alternative 3 shielded mating connector (P cable/Q cable)

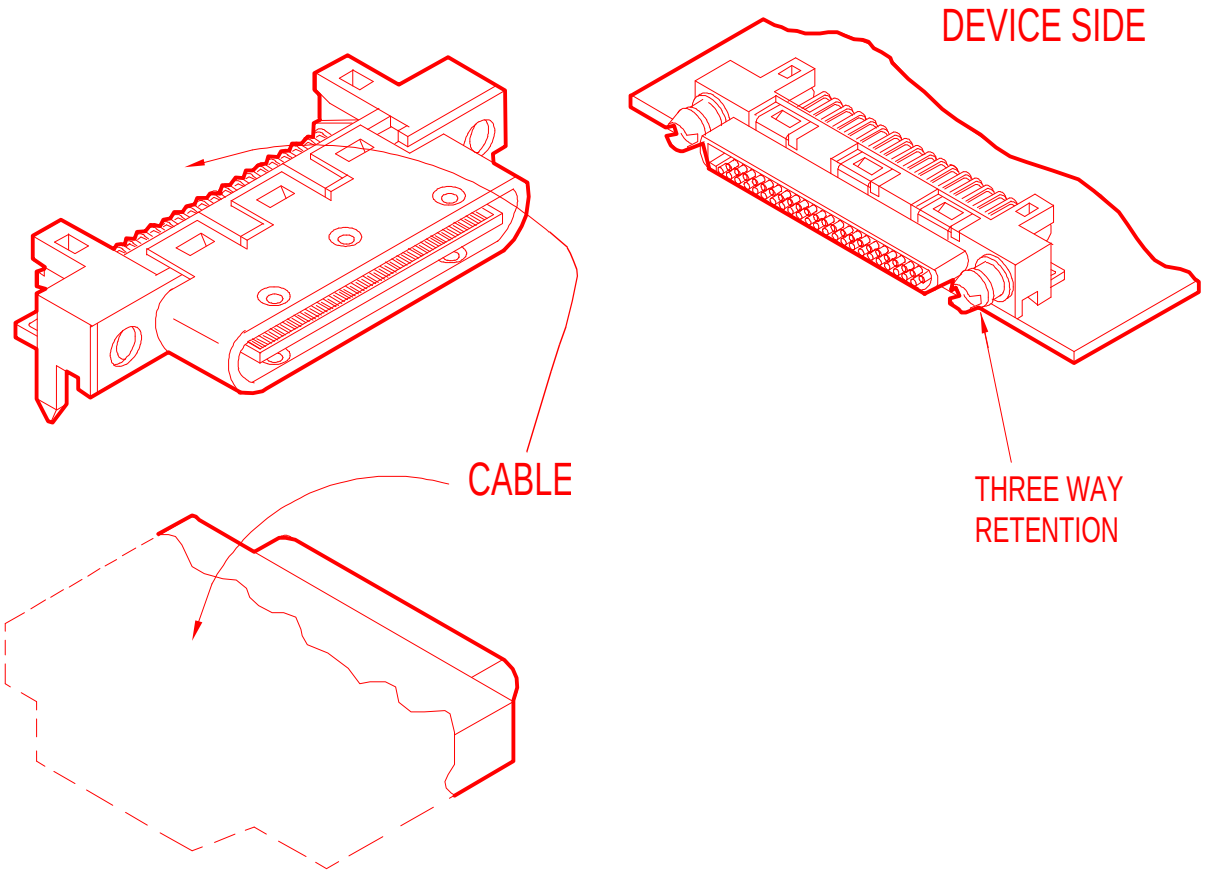


Figure 20 - 68-contact alternative 4 shielded SCSI device connector (P cable/Q cable)

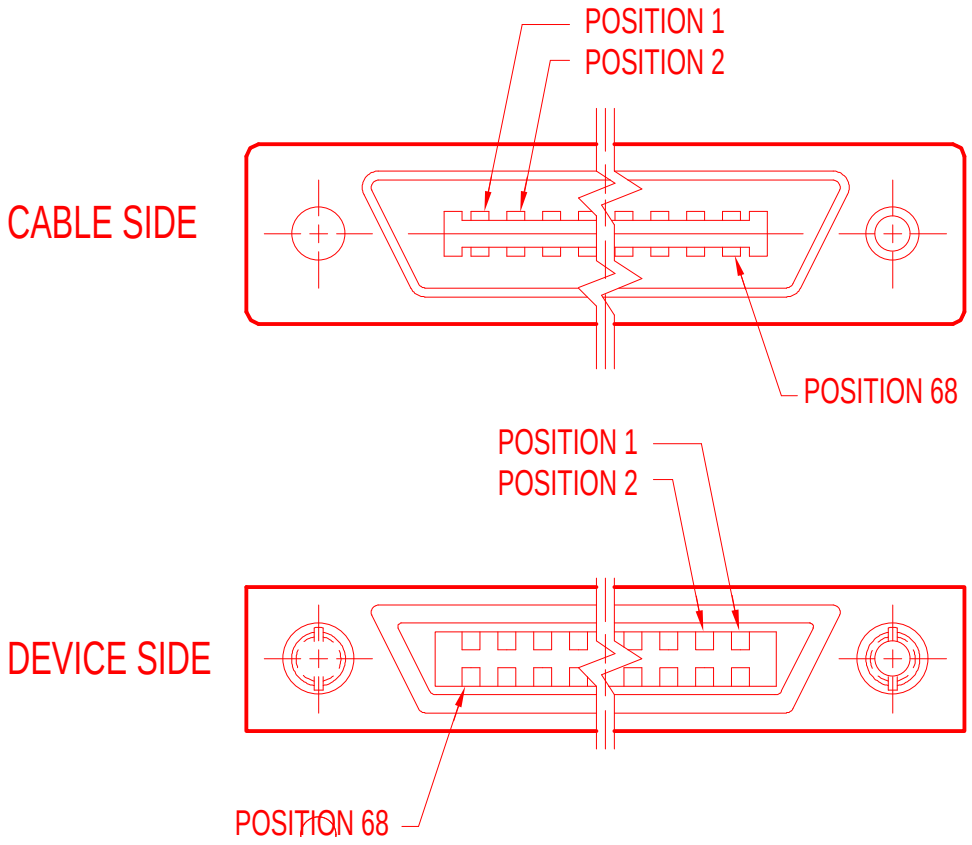


Figure 21 - 68-contact alternative 4 shielded contact positions (P cable/Q cable)

5.3 Connector contact assignments

The connector contact assignments are defined in tables 2 through 13. The signals are defined in subclause 8.1. The items under signal name labelled TERMPWR, TERMPWRQ, and RESERVED are not signals and are not required to meet the cable characteristics for signals in subclause 6.1. See 6.2 for characteristics of TERMPWR and TERMPWRQ. See 6.3 for characteristics of RESERVED lines.

Table 2 - Cross-reference to A cable contact assignments

Connector type	Transmission mode	Connector figure	Contact assignment table	Contact set
Nonshielded alternative 1	SE	8 and 9	3	2
Nonshielded alternative 1	LVD	8 and 9	7	2
Nonshielded alternative 1	HVD	8 and 9	10	2
Nonshielded alternative 2	SE	10 and 11	3	1
Nonshielded alternative 2	LVD	10 and 11	7	1
Nonshielded alternative 2	HVD	10 and 11	10	1
Shielded alternative 1	SE	14 and 15	3	2
Shielded alternative 1	LVD	14 and 15	7	2
Shielded alternative 1	HVD	14 and 15	10	2
Shielded alternative 2	SE	16 and 17	3	1
Shielded alternative 2	LVD	16 and 17	7	1
Shielded alternative 2	HVD	16 and 17	10	1

5.3.1 SE assignments

Table 3 defines the connector contact assignments for a 50 conductor primary bus that uses SE transceivers.

Table 3 - SE contact assignments - A cable

Signal name	Connector contact number		Cable conductor number		Connector contact number		Signal name
	Set 2	Set 1			Set 1	Set 2	
SIGNAL RETURN	1	1	1	2	2	26	-DB(0)
SIGNAL RETURN	2	3	3	4	4	27	-DB(1)
SIGNAL RETURN	3	5	5	6	6	28	-DB(2)
SIGNAL RETURN	4	7	7	8	8	29	-DB(3)
SIGNAL RETURN	5	9	9	10	10	30	-DB(4)
SIGNAL RETURN	6	11	11	12	12	31	-DB(5)
SIGNAL RETURN	7	13	13	14	14	32	-DB(6)
SIGNAL RETURN	8	15	15	16	16	33	-DB(7)
SIGNAL RETURN	9	17	17	18	18	34	-DB(P)
GROUND	10	19	19	20	20	35	GROUND
GROUND	11	21	21	22	22	36	GROUND
RESERVED	12	23	23	24	24	37	RESERVED
GROUND	13	25	25	26	26	38	TERMPWR
RESERVED	14	27	27	28	28	39	RESERVED
GROUND	15	29	29	30	30	40	GROUND
SIGNAL RETURN	16	31	31	32	32	41	-ATN
GROUND	17	33	33	34	34	42	GROUND
SIGNAL RETURN	18	35	35	36	36	43	-BSY
SIGNAL RETURN	19	37	37	38	38	44	-ACK
SIGNAL RETURN	20	39	39	40	40	45	-RST
SIGNAL RETURN	21	41	41	42	42	46	-MSG
SIGNAL RETURN	22	43	43	44	44	47	-SEL
SIGNAL RETURN	23	45	45	46	46	48	-C/D
SIGNAL RETURN	24	47	47	48	48	49	-REQ
SIGNAL RETURN	25	49	49	50	50	50	-I/O

Notes

1 The minus sign next to a signal indicates active low.

2 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using flat-ribbon cable.

3 Two sets of contact assignments are shown, Refer to table 2 to determine which set of contacts applies to each connector.

Table 4 defines the connector contact assignments for a 68 conductor primary bus that uses SE transceivers.

Table 4 - SE contact assignments - P cable

Signal name	Connector contact number	Cable conductor number		Connector contact number	Signal name
SIGNAL RETURN	1	1	2	35	-DB(12)
SIGNAL RETURN	2	3	4	36	-DB(13)
SIGNAL RETURN	3	5	6	37	-DB(14)
SIGNAL RETURN	4	7	8	38	-DB(15)
SIGNAL RETURN	5	9	10	39	-DB(P1)
SIGNAL RETURN	6	11	12	40	-DB(0)
SIGNAL RETURN	7	13	14	41	-DB(1)
SIGNAL RETURN	8	15	16	42	-DB(2)
SIGNAL RETURN	9	17	18	43	-DB(3)
SIGNAL RETURN	10	19	20	44	-DB(4)
SIGNAL RETURN	11	21	22	45	-DB(5)
SIGNAL RETURN	12	23	24	46	-DB(6)
SIGNAL RETURN	13	25	26	47	-DB(7)
SIGNAL RETURN	14	27	28	48	-DB(P)
GROUND	15	29	30	49	GROUND
GROUND	16	31	32	50	GROUND
TERMPWR	17	33	34	51	TERMPWR
TERMPWR	18	35	36	52	TERMPWR
RESERVED	19	37	38	53	RESERVED
GROUND	20	39	40	54	GROUND
SIGNAL RETURN	21	41	42	55	-ATN
GROUND	22	43	44	56	GROUND
SIGNAL RETURN	23	45	46	57	-BSY
SIGNAL RETURN	24	47	48	58	-ACK
SIGNAL RETURN	25	49	50	59	-RST
SIGNAL RETURN	26	51	52	60	-MSG
SIGNAL RETURN	27	53	54	61	-SEL
SIGNAL RETURN	28	55	56	62	-C/D
SIGNAL RETURN	29	57	58	63	-REQ
SIGNAL RETURN	30	59	60	64	-I/O
SIGNAL RETURN	31	61	62	65	-DB(8)
SIGNAL RETURN	32	63	64	66	-DB(9)
SIGNAL RETURN	33	65	66	67	-DB(10)
SIGNAL RETURN	34	67	68	68	-DB(11)

Notes
1 The minus sign next to a signal indicates active low.
2 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using-flat-ribbon cable.

Table 5 defines the connector contact assignments for a 68 conductor secondary bus that uses SE transceivers

Table 5 - SE contact assignments - Q cable

Signal name	Connector contact number	Cable conductor number		Connector contact number	Signal name
SIGNAL RETURN	1	1	2	35	-DB(28)
SIGNAL RETURN	2	3	4	36	-DB(29)
SIGNAL RETURN	3	5	6	37	-DB(30)
SIGNAL RETURN	4	7	8	38	-DB(31)
SIGNAL RETURN	5	9	10	39	-DB(P3)
SIGNAL RETURN	6	11	12	40	-DB(16)
SIGNAL RETURN	7	13	14	41	-DB(17)
SIGNAL RETURN	8	15	16	42	-DB(18)
SIGNAL RETURN	9	17	18	43	-DB(19)
SIGNAL RETURN	10	19	20	44	-DB(20)
SIGNAL RETURN	11	21	22	45	-DB(21)
SIGNAL RETURN	12	23	24	46	-DB(22)
SIGNAL RETURN	13	25	26	47	-DB(23)
SIGNAL RETURN	14	27	28	48	-DB(P2)
GROUND	15	29	30	49	GROUND
GROUND	16	31	32	50	GROUND
TERMPWRQ	17	33	34	51	TERMPWRQ
TERMPWRQ	18	35	36	52	TERMPWRQ
RESERVED	19	37	38	53	RESERVED
GROUND	20	39	40	54	GROUND
GROUND	21	41	42	55	TERMINATED
GROUND	22	43	44	56	GROUND
GROUND	23	45	46	57	TERMINATED
SIGNAL RETURN	24	47	48	58	-ACKQ
GROUND	25	49	50	59	TERMINATED
GROUND	26	51	52	60	TERMINATED
GROUND	27	53	54	61	TERMINATED
GROUND	28	55	56	62	TERMINATED
SIGNAL RETURN	29	57	58	63	-REQQ
GROUND	30	59	60	64	TERMINATED
SIGNAL RETURN	31	61	62	65	-DB(24)
SIGNAL RETURN	32	63	64	66	-DB(25)
SIGNAL RETURN	33	65	66	67	-DB(26)
SIGNAL RETURN	34	67	68	68	-DB(27)

Notes
1 The minus sign next to a signal indicates active low.
2 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using flat-ribbon cable.

Table 6 defines the connector contact assignments for a 68 conductor primary bus that uses SE transceivers.

Table 6 - SE contact assignments - nonshielded alternative 4 connector

Signal name	Connector contact number	Connector contact number	Signal name
12V CHARGE (note 1)	1	41	12V GROUND (note 1)
12V (note 1)	2	42	12V GROUND (note 1)
12V (note 1)	3	43	12V GROUND (note 1)
12V (note 1)	4	44	MATED 1 (note 1)
OPT 3.3V (note 1)	5	45	OPT 3.3V CHARGE (note 1)
OPT 3.3V (note 1)	6	46	GROUND
-DB(11)	7	47	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(10)	8	48	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(9)	9	49	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(8)	10	50	SIGNAL RETURN
-I/O	11	51	SIGNAL RETURN
-REQ	12	52	SIGNAL RETURN
-C/D	13	53	SIGNAL RETURN
-SEL	14	54	SIGNAL RETURN
-MSG	15	55	SIGNAL RETURN
-RST	16	56	SIGNAL RETURN
-ACK	17	57	SIGNAL RETURN
-BSY	18	58	SIGNAL RETURN
-ATN	19	59	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(P)	20	60	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(7)	21	61	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(6)	22	62	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(5)	23	63	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(4)	24	64	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(3)	25	65	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(2)	26	66	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(1)	27	67	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(0)	28	68	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(P1)	29	69	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB((15)	30	70	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(14)	31	71	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(13)	32	72	SIGNAL RETURN
-DB(12)	33	73	SIGNAL RETURN
5V (note 1)	34	74	MATED 2 (note 1)
5V (note 1)	35	75	5V GROUND (note 1)
5V CHARGE (note 1)	36	76	5V GROUND (note 1)
SPINDLE SYNC (note 1)	37	77	ACTIVE LED OUT (note 1)
RMT_START (note 1)	38	78	DLYD_START (note 1)
SCSI ID (0) (note 1)	39	79	SCSI ID (1) (note 1)
SCSI ID (2) (note 1)	40	80	SCSI ID (3) (note 1)

Notes
1 See annex J for the definition of these signals.
2 The minus sign next to a signal indicates active low.

5.3.2 Differential connector contact assignments

Table 7 defines theconnector contact assignments for a 50 conductor primary bus that uses LVD transceivers.

Table 7 - LVD contact assignments - A cable

Signal name	Connector contact number		Cable conductor number		Connector contact number		Signal name
	Set 2	Set 1			Set 1	Set 2	
+DB(0)	1	1	1	2	2	26	-DB(0)
+DB(1)	2	3	3	4	4	27	-DB(1)
+DB(2)	3	5	5	6	6	28	-DB(2)
+DB(3)	4	7	7	8	8	29	-DB(3)
+DB(4)	5	9	9	10	10	30	-DB(4)
+DB(5)	6	11	11	12	12	31	-DB(5)
+DB(6)	7	13	13	14	14	32	-DB(6)
+DB(7)	8	15	15	16	16	33	-DB(7)
+DB(P)	9	17	17	18	18	34	-DB(P)
GROUND	10	19	19	20	20	35	GROUND
DIFFSENS	11	21	21	22	22	36	GROUND
RESERVED	12	23	23	24	24	37	RESERVED
TERMPWR	13	25	25	26	26	38	TERMPWR
RESERVED	14	27	27	28	28	39	RESERVED
GROUND	15	29	29	30	30	40	GROUND
+ATN	16	31	31	32	32	41	-ATN
GROUND	17	33	33	34	34	42	GROUND
+BSY	18	35	35	36	36	43	-BSY
+ACK	19	37	37	38	38	44	-ACK
+RST	20	39	39	40	40	45	-RST
+MSG	21	41	41	42	42	46	-MSG
+SEL	22	43	43	44	44	47	-SEL
+C/D	23	45	45	46	46	48	-C/D
+REQ	24	47	47	48	48	49	-REQ
+I/O	25	49	49	50	50	50	-I/O

Notes

1 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using flat-ribbon cable.

2 Two sets of contact assignments are shown, Refer to table 2 to determine which set of contacts applies to each connector.

Table 8 defines the connector contact assignments for a 68 conductor primary bus that uses LVD transceivers.

Table 8 - LVD contact assignments - P cable

Signal name	Connector contact number	Cable conductor number		Connector contact number	Signal name
+DB(12)	1	1	2	35	-DB(12)
+DB(13)	2	3	4	36	-DB(13)
+DB(14)	3	5	6	37	-DB(14)
+DB(15)	4	7	8	38	-DB(15)
+DB(P1)	5	9	10	39	-DB(P1)
+DB(0)	6	11	12	40	-DB(0)
+DB(1)	7	13	14	41	-DB(1)
+DB(2)	8	15	16	42	-DB(2)
+DB(3)	9	17	18	43	-DB(3)
+DB(4)	10	19	20	44	-DB(4)
+DB(5)	11	21	22	45	-DB(5)
+DB(6)	12	23	24	46	-DB(6)
+DB(7)	13	25	26	47	-DB(7)
+DB(P)	14	27	28	48	-DB(P)
GROUND	15	29	30	49	GROUND
DIFFSENS	16	31	32	50	GROUND
TERMPWR	17	33	34	51	TERMPWR
TERMPWR	18	35	36	52	TERMPWR
RESERVED	19	37	38	53	RESERVED
GROUND	20	39	40	54	GROUND
+ATN	21	41	42	55	-ATN
GROUND	22	43	44	56	GROUND
+BSY	23	45	46	57	-BSY
+ACK	24	47	48	58	-ACK
+RST	25	49	50	59	-RST
+MSG	26	51	52	60	-MSG
+SEL	27	53	54	61	-SEL
+C/D	28	55	56	62	-C/D
+REQ	29	57	58	63	-REQ
+I/O	30	59	60	64	-I/O
+DB(8)	31	61	62	65	-DB(8)
+DB(9)	32	63	64	66	-DB(9)
+DB(10)	33	65	66	67	-DB(10)
+DB(11)	34	67	68	68	-DB(11)

Notes

1 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using flat-ribbon cable.

Table 9 defines the connector contact assignments for a 68 conductor secondary bus that uses LVD transceivers.

Table 9 - LVD contact assignments - Q cable

Signal name	Connector contact number	Cable conductor number		Connector contact number	Signal name
+DB(28)	1	1	2	35	-DB(28)
+DB(29)	2	3	4	36	-DB(29)
+DB(30)	3	5	6	37	-DB(30)
+DB(31)	4	7	8	38	-DB(31)
+DB(P3)	5	9	10	39	-DB(P3)
+DB(16)	6	11	12	40	-DB(16)
+DB(17)	7	13	14	41	-DB(17)
+DB(18)	8	15	16	42	-DB(18)
+DB(19)	9	17	18	43	-DB(19)
+DB(20)	10	19	20	44	-DB(20)
+DB(21)	11	21	22	45	-DB(21)
+DB(22)	12	23	24	46	-DB(22)
+DB(23)	13	25	26	47	-DB(23)
+DB(P2)	14	27	28	48	-DB(P2)
GROUND	15	29	30	49	GROUND
DIFFSENS	16	31	32	50	GROUND
TERMPWRQ	17	33	34	51	TERMPWRQ
TERMPWRQ	18	35	36	52	TERMPWRQ
RESERVED	19	37	38	53	RESERVED
GROUND	20	39	40	54	GROUND
TERMINATED	21	41	42	55	TERMINATED
GROUND	22	43	44	56	GROUND
TERMINATED	23	45	46	57	TERMINATED
+ACKQ	24	47	48	58	-ACKQ
TERMINATED	25	49	50	59	TERMINATED
TERMINATED	26	51	52	60	TERMINATED
TERMINATED	27	53	54	61	TERMINATED
TERMINATED	28	55	56	62	TERMINATED
+REQQ	29	57	58	63	-REQQ
TERMINATED	30	59	60	64	TERMINATED
+DB(24)	31	61	62	65	-DB(24)
+DB(25)	32	63	64	66	-DB(25)
+DB(26)	33	65	66	67	-DB(26)
+DB(27)	34	67	68	68	-DB(27)

Notes

1 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using flat-ribbon cable.

Table 10 defines the connector contact assignments for a 50 conductor primary bus that uses HVD transceivers.

Table 10 - HVD contact assignments - A cable

Signal name	Connector contact number		Cable conductor number		Connector contact number		Signal name
	Set 2	Set 1			Set 1	Set 2	
GROUND	1	1	1	2	2	26	GROUND
+DB(0)	2	3	3	4	4	27	-DB(0)
+DB(1)	3	5	5	6	6	28	-DB(1)
+DB(2)	4	7	7	8	8	29	-DB(2)
+DB(3)	5	9	9	10	10	30	-DB(3)
+DB(4)	6	11	11	12	12	31	-DB(4)
+DB(5)	7	13	13	14	14	32	-DB(5)
+DB(6)	8	15	15	16	16	33	-DB(6)
+DB(7)	9	17	17	18	18	34	-DB(7)
+DB(P)	10	19	19	20	20	35	-DB(P)
DIFFSENS	11	21	21	22	22	36	GROUND
RESERVED	12	23	23	24	24	37	RESERVED
TERMPWR	13	25	25	26	26	38	TERMPWR
RESERVED	14	27	27	28	28	39	RESERVED
+ATN	15	29	29	30	30	40	-ATN
GROUND	16	31	31	32	32	41	GROUND
+BSY	17	33	33	34	34	42	-BSY
+ACK	18	35	35	36	36	43	-ACK
+RST	19	37	37	38	38	44	-RST
+MSG	20	39	39	40	40	45	-MSG
+SEL	21	41	41	42	42	46	-SEL
+C/D	22	43	43	44	44	47	-C/D
+REQ	23	45	45	46	46	48	-REQ
+I/O	24	47	47	48	48	49	-I/O
GROUND	25	49	49	50	50	50	GROUND

Notes

1 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using flat-ribbon cable.

2 Two sets of contact assignments are shown, Refer to table 2 to determine which set of contacts applies to each connector.

Table 11 defines the connector contact assignments for a 68 conductor primary bus that uses HVD transceivers.

Table 11 - HVD contact assignments - P cable

Signal name	Connector contact number	Cable conductor number		Connector contact number	Signal name
+DB(12)	1	1	2	35	-DB(12)
+DB(13)	2	3	4	36	-DB(13)
+DB(14)	3	5	6	37	-DB(14)
+DB(15)	4	7	8	38	-DB(15)
+DB(P1)	5	9	10	39	-DB(P1)
GROUND	6	11	12	40	GROUND
+DB(0)	7	13	14	41	-DB(0)
+DB(1)	8	15	16	42	-DB(1)
+DB(2)	9	17	18	43	-DB(2)
+DB(3)	10	19	20	44	-DB(3)
+DB(4)	11	21	22	45	-DB(4)
+DB(5)	12	23	24	46	-DB(5)
+DB(6)	13	25	26	47	-DB(6)
+DB(7)	14	27	28	48	-DB(7)
+DB(P)	15	29	30	49	-DB(P)
DIFFSENS	16	31	32	50	GROUND
TERMPWR	17	33	34	51	TERMPWR
TERMPWR	18	35	36	52	TERMPWR
RESERVED	19	37	38	53	RESERVED
+ATN	20	39	40	54	-ATN
GROUND	21	41	42	55	GROUND
+BSY	22	43	44	56	-BSY
+ACK	23	45	46	57	-ACK
+RST	24	47	48	58	-RST
+MSG	25	49	50	59	-MSG
+SEL	26	51	52	60	-SEL
+C/D	27	53	54	61	-C/D
+REQ	28	55	56	62	-REQ
+I/O	29	57	58	63	-I/O
GROUND	30	59	60	64	GROUND
+DB(8)	31	61	62	65	-DB(8)
+DB(9)	32	63	64	66	-DB(9)
+DB(10)	33	65	66	67	-DB(10)
+DB(11)	34	67	68	68	-DB(11)

Notes

1 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using flat-ribbon cable.

Table 12 defines the connector contact assignments for a 68 conductor secondary bus that uses HVD transceivers.

Table 12 - HVD contact assignments - Q cable

Signal name	Connector contact number	Cable conductor number		Connector contact number	Signal name
+DB(28)	1	1	2	35	-DB(28)
+DB(29)	2	3	4	36	-DB(29)
+DB(30)	3	5	6	37	-DB(30)
+DB(31)	4	7	8	38	-DB(31)
+DB(P3)	5	9	10	39	-DB(P3)
GROUND	6	11	12	40	GROUND
+DB(16)	7	13	14	41	-DB(16)
+DB(17)	8	15	16	42	-DB(17)
+DB(18)	9	17	18	43	-DB(18)
+DB(19)	10	19	20	44	-DB(19)
+DB(20)	11	21	22	45	-DB(20)
+DB(21)	12	23	24	46	-DB(21)
+DB(22)	13	25	26	47	-DB(22)
+DB(23)	14	27	28	48	-DB(23)
+DB(P2)	15	29	30	49	-DB(P2)
DIFFSENS	16	31	32	50	GROUND
TERMPWRQ	17	33	34	51	TERMPWRQ
TERMPWRQ	18	35	36	52	TERMPWRQ
RESERVED	19	37	38	53	RESERVED
TERMINATED	20	39	40	54	TERMINATED
GROUND	21	41	42	55	GROUND
TERMINATED	22	43	44	56	TERMINATED
+ACKQ	23	45	46	57	-ACKQ
TERMINATED	24	47	48	58	TERMINATED
TERMINATED	25	49	50	59	TERMINATED
TERMINATED	26	51	52	60	TERMINATED
TERMINATED	27	53	54	61	TERMINATED
+REQQ	28	55	56	62	-REQQ
TERMINATED	29	57	58	63	TERMINATED
GROUND	30	59	60	64	GROUND
+DB(24)	31	61	62	65	-DB(24)
+DB(25)	32	63	64	66	-DB(25)
+DB(26)	33	65	66	67	-DB(26)
+DB(27)	34	67	68	68	-DB(27)

Notes

1 The conductor number refers to the conductor position when using flat-ribbon cable.

Table 13 defines the connector contact assignments for a 68 conductor primary bus that uses HVD or LVD transceivers.

Table 13 - HVD and LVD contact assignments - nonshielded alternative 4 connector

Signal name	Connector contact number	Connector contact number	Signal name
12V CHARGE (note 1)	1	41	12V GROUND (note 1)
12V (note 1)	2	42	12V GROUND (note 1)
12V (note 1)	3	43	12V GROUND (note 1)
12V (note 1)	4	44	MATED 1 (note 1)
OPT 3.3V (note 1)	5	45	OPT 3.3V CHARGE (note 1)
OPT 3.3V (note 1)	6	46	DIFFSNS
-DB(11)	7	47	-DB(11)
-DB(10)	8	48	-DB(10)
-DB(9)	9	49	-DB(9)
-DB(8)	10	50	-DB(8)
-I/O	11	51	+I/O
-REQ	12	52	+REQ
-C/D	13	53	+C/D
-SEL	14	54	+SEL
-MSG	15	55	+MSG
-RST	16	56	+RST
-ACK	17	57	+ACK
-BSY	18	58	+BSY
-ATN	19	59	+ATN
-DB(P)	20	60	+DB(P)
-DB(7)	21	61	+DB(7)
-DB(6)	22	62	+DB(6)
-DB(5)	23	63	+DB(5)
-DB(4)	24	64	+DB(4)
-DB(3)	25	65	+DB(3)
-DB(2)	26	66	+DB(2)
-DB(1)	27	67	+DB(1)
-DB(0)	28	68	+DB(0)
-DB(P1)	29	69	+DB(P1)
-DB((15)	30	70	+DB((15)
-DB(14)	31	71	+DB(14)
-DB(13)	32	72	+DB(13)
-DB(12)	33	73	+DB(12)
5V (note 1)	34	74	MATED 2 (note 1)
5V (note 1)	35	75	5V GROUND (note 1)
5V CHARGE (note 1)	36	76	5V GROUND (note 1)
SPINDLE SYNC (note 1)	37	77	ACTIVE LED OUT (note 1)
RMT_START (note 1)	38	78	DLYD_START (note 1)
SCSI ID (0) (note 1)	39	79	SCSI ID (1) (note 1)
SCSI ID (2) (note 1)	40	80	SCSI ID (3) (note 1)

Notes
1 See annex J for the definition of these signals.
2 The minus sign next to a signal indicates active low.

6 SCSI bus cables

This clause defines the characteristics of cables used to connect SCSI-3 parallel interface devices. These cables are part of the SCSI bus. The length of the cable within the device enclosure is included when calculating the total cable length of the SCSI bus. The four types of cables allowed are:

a) unshielded flat-ribbon cable;
b) unshielded flat twisted-pair ribbon cable;
c) unshielded round twisted-pair cables;
d) shielded round twisted-pair cables.

If twisted-pair cables are used, the twisted pairs in the cable shall be wired to physically opposing contacts in the connector.

The items under signal name labelled TERMPWR, TERMPWRQ, and RESERVED are not signals and are not required to meet the cable characteristics for signals in 6.1. See 6.2 for characteristics of TERMPWR and TERMPWRQ. See 6.3 for characteristics of RESERVED lines.

Interconnection of SCSI devices by means other than cables is allowed (e.g., by backplanes using printed wiring boards). Detailed descriptions of these other means are not part of this standard; however, all segments of an SCSI bus are subject to the electromagnetic concepts presented in this standard. These are:

a) characteristic impedance (see 6.1);
b) propagation delay (see 6.1);
c) cumulative length (see 6.4 and 6.5);
d) stub length (see 6.4 and 6.5); and
e) device spacing (see 6.4 and 6.5).

A primary bus carries an 8-bit or 16-bit data bus and the signals used to move information between SCSI devices. A primary bus provides an 8-bit or 16-bit data transfer path. A secondary bus carries an additional 16-bit data bus that, used in conjunction with a 16-bit primary bus, provides a 32-bit data transfer path.

6.1 Cable characteristics for signals

The signals shall not be internally connected together within the connectors or cables. See 8.1 for signal definitions.

The minimum conductor size for signals should be as specified in table 14.

Table 14 - Recommended minimum conductor size

	Recommended minimum conductor size				
	SE		LVD		HVD
	3 meter cable	6 meter cable (note)	12 meter cable	>12 meter cable	25 meter cable
All conductors except terminator power and reserved lines	0,050 92 mm^2 (30 AWG)	0,080 42 mm^2 (28 AWG)	0,032 4 mm^2 (32 AWG)	0,080 42 mm^2 (28 AWG)	0,050 92 mm^2 (30 AWG)
Single terminator power line	0,080 42 mm^2 (28 AWG)	0,080 42 mm^2 (28 AWG)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Multiple terminator power lines	0,050 92 mm^2 (30 AWG)	0,050 92 mm^2 (30 AWG)	0,032 4 mm^2 (32 AWG)	0,080 42 mm^2 (28 AWG)	0,050 92 mm^2 (30 AWG)
Note: SE 6 meter cable shall only apply to SCSI devices running at or below fast-5 data transfer rates.					

Editors Note 1 - GOP: The LVD >12 meter minimum conductor size was changed to the value in the minimum conductor size table by a vote of the July 97 plenary.

The SE characteristic impedance of the cable is defined in table 15 and the differential characteristic impedance of the cable is defined in table 16. Two measurement techniques can be used to determine the impedance. The SE measurement technique is applicable to cables used with SE transceivers. The differential measurement technique is applicable to cables used with differential transceivers. See annex E for measurement techniques

Table 15 - SE characteristic impedance of cable at indicated data transfer rate

Description	SE (ohms)		
	Fast-10	Fast-20	Fast-40
Maximum for REQ and ACK signals	96	96	N/A
Nominal for REQ and ACK signals	84	90	N/A
Minimum for REQ and ACK signals	72	84	N/A
Maximum, all other signals	96	100	N/A
Nominal, all other signals	84	90	N/A
Minimum, all other signals	72	80	N/A
Maximum difference between any two signals in the same cable	12	N/A	N/A
Note: SCSI devices limited to fast-5 transfer rates may use the SE characteristic impedance as defined in the SCSI-2 standard.			

Table 16 - Differential characteristic impedance of cable at indicated data transfer rate

Description	Differential (ohms)		
	Fast-10	Fast-20	Fast-40
Maximum for REQ and ACK signals	160	160	135
Nominal for REQ and ACK signals	122	122	N/A
Minimum for REQ and ACK signals	115	115	110
Maximum, all other signals	160	160	135
Nominal, all other signals	122	122	N/A
Minimum, all other signals	115	115	110
Maximum difference between any two signals in the same cable	20	20	N/A
Note: SCSI devices limited to fast-5 transfer rates may use the differential characteristic impedance as defined in the SCSI-2 standard.			

Editors Note 2 - GOP: The July 97 plenary voted to remove the fast-5 impedance values from the SE characteristic impedance of cable and the differential characteristic impedance of cable tables above.

The maximum propagation delay of any signal on SCSI cables shall be 5,4 ns/m. The maximum difference between any two signals on the same SCSI cable shall be 0,15 ns/m.

The maximum signal attenuation for round cables shall be 0,095 dB maximum per meter at 5 Mhz, measured differentially.

6.2 Cable characteristics for TERMPWR and TERMPWRQ lines

The TERMPWR and TERMPWRQ lines should be decoupled at each terminator with at least a 2,2µF bypass capacitor.

See 7.5 and 10 for additional information.

6.3 Cable characteristics for RESERVED lines

The RESERVED lines shall be left open in the bus terminator assemblies and in the SCSI devices. The RESERVED lines shall have continuity from one end of the SCSI bus to the other end.

6.4 Cables used with SE transceivers

The maximum distance between terminators when using SE transceivers shall be as defined in table 17.

Table 17 - SE maximum distance between terminators

Number of attached SCSI devices	Maximum distance between terminators (meters)			
	Fast-5	Fast-10	Fast-20 (note 1)	Fast-40
1 to 4 maximum capacitance (25 pf) SCSI devices	6	3	3	N/A
5 to 8 maximum capacitance (25 PF) SCSI devices	6	3	1.5	N/A
9 to 16 maximum capacitance (25 PF) SCSI devices	6	3	note 2	N/A

Note:
1 - For environments where all elements of the bus (cables, device interfaces, environmental noise and other parameters) are controlled to be better than minimally required, it may be possible to extend the path length and device count (see note 9 in 7.1.4).
2 - Extending the device count beyond eight requires specification control beyond the minimum specified in this document. It is recommended that the devices be uniformly spaced between terminators with the end devices located as close as possible to the terminators.

The stub length and spacing when using SE transceivers shall not exceed 0,1 meter. The stub length is

measured from the transceiver to the connection of the mainline SCSI bus (see figure 4). The spacing of devices on the mainline SCSI bus should be at least three times the stub length to avoid stub clustering (See annex F).

The following requirements based on the connector contact assignments in 5.3.1 ensure that all SCSI round cables can be used with either SE or differential transceivers:

a) In the P cable and Q cable conductor pairs #47-48 (ACK, ACKQ) and #57-58 (REQ, REQQ) shall be in the cable core;
b) In the P cable and Q cable, if there are more than three conductor pairs in the cable core, conductor pairs #47-48 (ACK, ACKQ) and #57-58 (REQ, REQQ) shall not be adjacent to each other;
c) In the A cable conductor pairs #37-38 (ACK) and #47-48 (REQ) shall be in the cable core;
d) In the A cable, if there are more than three conductor pairs in the cable core, conductor pairs #37-38 (ACK) and #47-48 (REQ) shall not be adjacent to each other;
e) Cable conductor pairs used for the DATA BUS (DBnPx) shall be in the outer layer of the cable;
f) Each cable conductor pair shall consist of the ground and its associated signal.

See annex D for information on interconnecting busses of different widths and annex G for terminator, impedance, crosstalk, and bus length considerations.

The magnitude of the ground offset voltage between logic grounds on any two device connectors shall be less than 50 mV.

6.5 Cables used with differential transceivers

Twisted-pair cable (either twisted-flat or discrete wire twisted pairs) should be used with differential transceivers.

The maximum distance between terminators when using differential transceivers shall be as defined in table 18.

Table 18 - Differential maximum distance between terminators

Interconnect	Maximum distance between terminators (meters)			
	Fast-5	Fast-10	Fast-20	Fast-40
Point-to-point interconnect	25	25	25	25 (note)
Multidrop interconnect	25	25	25	12
Note: SCSI devices shall be within a stub length of the termination (see figure 4).				

6.5.1 HVD stub length and spacing

The stub length and spacing when using HVD transceivers shall be as defined in table 19.

Table 19 - HVD stub length and spacing requirements

Maximum data rate	HVD Stub length and spacing requirements
Fast-20	The stub length shall not exceed 0,2 meter. The stub length is measured from the transceiver to the connection of the mainline SCSI bus. The spacing of devices on the mainline SCSI bus should be at least three times the stub length to avoid stub clustering (See annex F).
Fast-40	The stub length shall not exceed 0,1 meter. The difference in stub length shall be less than 1.27 cm for the REQ, ACK, and PARITY signals. Stub length differences on the + and - signals of the same differential line should be minimized. The stub length is measured from the transceiver to the connection of the mainline SCSI bus. The spacing of devices on the mainline SCSI bus shall be as indicated in table 20.

Table 20 - Minimum stub connection spacing rules for HVD SCSI devices

Transmission mode	Minimum spacing between stub connectors (meters)				
	40 pF/m (note)	65 pF/m (note)	90 pF/m (note)	115 pF/m (note)	140 pF/m (note)
HVD	0,20	0,12	0,09	0,07	0,06
Note: Capacitance measured between a signal conductor and ground when all other conductors in the cable are connected to ground.					

6.5.2 LVD stub length and spacing

The stub length when using LVD transceivers shall not exceed 0,1 meter. The difference in stub length shall be less than 1.27 cm for the REQ, ACK, and PARITY signals. Stub length differences on the + and - signals of the same differential line should be minimized. The stub length is measured from the transceiver to the connection of the mainline SCSI bus. The spacing of devices on the mainline SCSI bus shall be as indicated in table 21.

Table 21 - Minimum stub connection spacing rules for LVD SCSI devices

Transmission mode	Minimum spacing between stub connectors (meters)				
	40 pF/m (note)	65 pF/m (note)	90 pF/m (note)	115 pF/m (note)	140 pF/m (note)
LVD	0,36	0,22	0,16	0,13	0,10
Note: Capacitance measured between a signal conductor and ground when all other conductors in the cable are connected to ground.					

7 SCSI parallel interface electrical characteristics

The SCSI-3 parallel interface can use one of the following transceiver alternatives:

a) SE drivers and receivers, in which one conductor of each signal pair is active and one is grounded;
b) differential drivers and receivers, in which both conductors of each signal pair are active.

The SE and differential alternatives are mutually exclusive.

For measurements in this clause, SCSI bus termination is assumed to be external to the SCSI device. See 6.3 for the terminating requirements for the RESERVED lines. SCSI devices may have provision for allowing optional internal termination provided the internal termination conforms with 7.1.1, 7.2.1, 7.3.1 or 7.4.1 when enabled and the SCSI device, including the disabled termination, conforms with 7.1.4, 7.2.4, or 7.4.3 when the internal termination is disabled.

In addition to the device electrical defined in the remaining subclauses of this clause devices shall met the requirements specified in table 22 at the device connector.

Table 22 - Electrical requirements at the device connector

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum	Notes
MSE input voltage (D.C.)	-0,5	5,5	Absolute maximum all operating conditions including the DIFFSENS connection for MSE and LVD devices for SCSI devices meeting the fast-5 and fast-10 requirements in table 23.
MSE input voltage (D.C.)	-0,5	4,1	Absolute maximum all operating conditions including the DIFFSENS connection for MSE and LVD devices for SCSI devices meeting the fast-20 requirements in table 23.
LVD output off D.C. current magnitude (μA)		20	@ + or - signal V_{IN} < 2,5 V to local ground each signal pin.
LVD input voltage (D.C. V + or - signal to local ground)	-0,5	4,1	Absolute maximum all operating conditions all signals except DIFFSENS.
Input leakage D.C. current magnitude (μA) (multimode transceiver)		20	@ + or - signal V_{IN} 0 to V_{CC} to local ground each signal pin.
HVD input voltage (D.C. V + or - signal to local ground)	-10	15	Absolute maximum all operating conditions.
HVD input voltage DIFFSENS (D.C. V)	-7	17.25	Absolute maximum all operating conditions.

7.1 SE alternative

7.1.1 SE termination

All SCSI bus signals are common among all devices connected to the bus. All signal lines shall be terminated at both ends with a terminator that is compatible with the type of transceivers used in the SCSI devices. The termination points define the ends of the bus. These termination points may be internal to an SCSI device.

NOTE 4 - If the termination is provided within an SCSI device that device should not be removed from the SCSI bus while the bus is in use.

All SE conductors not defined as RESERVED, SIGNAL RETURN, or TERMPWR shall be terminated exactly once at each end of the bus. The termination of each signal shall meet the following requirements:

a) the terminators shall be powered by the TERMPWR line and may receive additional power from other sources but shall not require such additional power for proper operation (see 7.5);
b) each terminator shall source current to the signal line whenever its terminal voltage is below 2,5 V D.C. and this current shall not exceed 24 mA for any line voltage above 0,2 V d.c, even when all other signal lines are driven at 4.0 V D.C.;
c) the voltage on all released signal lines shall be at least 2,5 V D.C.;
d) these conditions shall be met with any CONFORMING configuration of targets and initiators as long as at least one device is supplying TERMPWR;
e) the terminator at each end of the SCSI bus (see 7.1.4) shall add a maximum of 25 pF capacitance to each signal.
f) the terminator shall not source current to the signal line whenever its terminal voltage is above 3,24 V D.C. except in applications where the bus is less than 0,3 m.

Terminators employing a 220 ohm resistor to 5 volts and a 330 ohm resistor to ground shall not be used.

7.1.2 SE output characteristics

SE signals shall use either passive-negation or active-negation drivers. Passive-negation drivers shall only be used in SCSI devices that only support data rates up to Fast-10 data transfer rates. Passive-negation drivers have two states, asserted and high-impedance. Passive-negation drivers are usually implemented using an open-collector or an open-drain circuit. Active-negation drivers have three states: asserted, negated, and high-impedance. Each signal sourced by an SCSI device shall have the D.C. output characteristics when measured at the SCSI device's connector defined in table 23.

Table 23 - SE output voltage characteristics

Maximum data rate	SE output voltage characteristics
Fast-5	a) V_{OL} (low-level output voltage) = 0,0 V D.C. to 0,5 V D.C. at I_{OL} = 48 mA (signal asserted); b) V_{OH} (high-level output voltage) = 2,5 V D.C. to 5,25 V D.C. (signal negated)
Fast-10	a) V_{OL} (low-level output voltage) = 0,0 V D.C. to 0,5 V D.C. at I_{OL} = 48 mA (signal asserted); b) V_{OH} (high-level output voltage) = 2,5 V D.C. to 5,25 V D.C. (signal negated)
Fast-20	a) V_{OL} (low-level output voltage) = 0,0 V D.C. to 0,5 V D.C. at I_{OL} = 48 mA (signal asserted); b) V_{OH} (high-level output voltage) = 2,5 V D.C. to 3,7 V D.C. (signal negated)
Fast-40	N/A

NOTE 5 - Passive-negation drivers do not source current to achieve the V_{OH} voltage level. They enter the high-impedance state and rely on the terminator to source the current.

NOTE 6 - It is recommended that drivers not source current above 3,7 V D.C.

The output characteristics (signal negated) for active-negation drivers shall be constrained to operate in the non-shaded areas of figure 22.

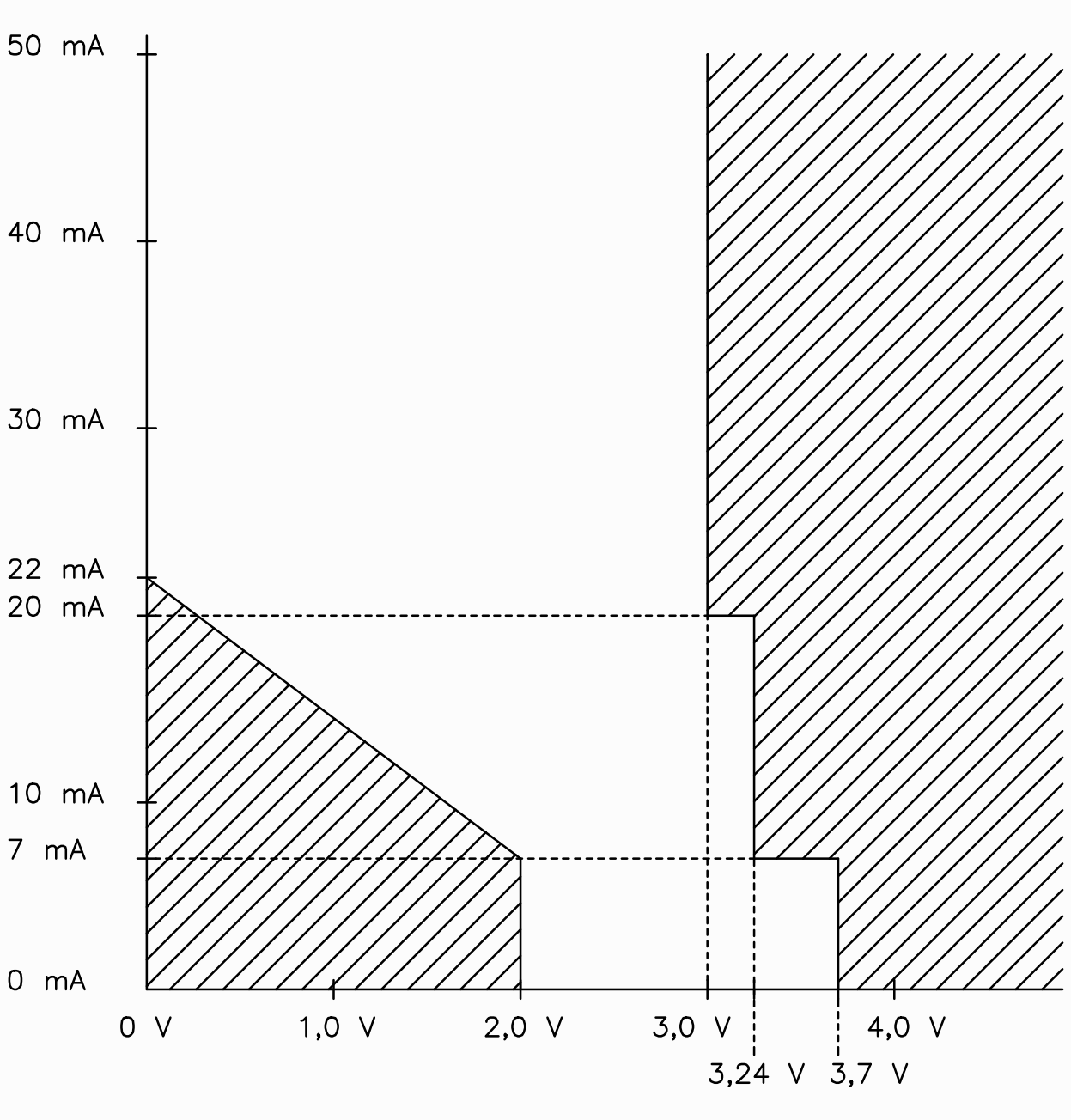


Figure 22 - Active negation current vs. voltage

NOTE 7 - Figure 22 shows the allowed domains for the D.C. output characteristics of an active-negation driver when negated. It is not intended to show A.C. output characteristics, which may be different due to other requirements such as slew rate specifications. To measure the actual device D.C. output characteristics, it is necessary to vary the device load, so the test circuit shown in figure 23 is not applicable to this measurement.

While active-negation drivers may be used on any non-OR-tied signal (see 8.3), their usage is particularly valuable on the ACK, REQ, ACKQ, and REQQ signals, because these signals are vulnerable to double clocking on the true-to-false transition. Additional benefit may be achieved by using active-negation drivers on the DATA BUS and parity signals when operating in fast synchronous data transfer mode by reducing the skews between the first group of signals (ACK, REQ, ACKQ, and REQQ) and the DATA BUS and

parity signals.

All SE drivers shall maintain the high-impedance state during power-on and power-off cycles.

SCSI devices should meet the following specifications for all signals when measured on the test circuit shown in figure 23 with a load capacitor (C_L) of 15 pF ± 5%:

a) t_{rise} (rise rate) = 520 mv per ns maximum (0,7 V D.C. to 2,3 V D.C.);
b) t_{fall} (fall rate) = 520 mv per ns maximum (2,3 V D.C. to 0,7 V D.C.).

All other output timing specifications shall be measured with the test circuit shown in figure 23 with a load capacitor (C_L) of 200 pF ± 5%.

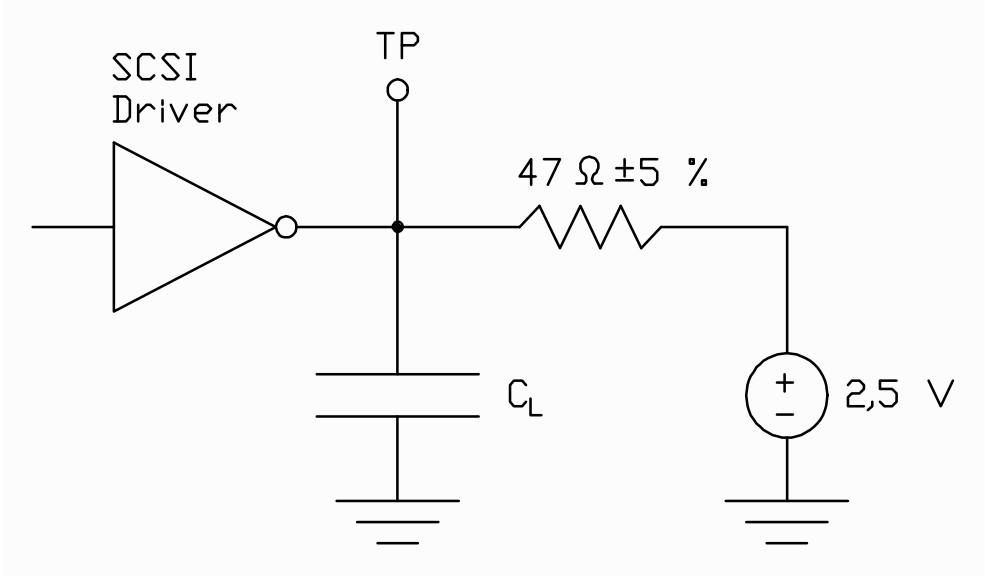


Figure 23 - SE test circuit

7.1.3 SE input characteristics

SCSI devices with power-on shall meet the requirements in 9.2.1 and 9.2.2 and the electrical characteristics in table 24 on each signal (including both receivers and disabled drivers).

Table 24 - SE input voltage characteristics

Maximum data rate	SE input voltage characteristics
Fast-5	a) VIL (low-level input voltage) = 0,0 V D.C. to 0,8 V D.C. (signal true); b) VIH (high-level input voltage) = 2,0 V D.C. to 5,25 V D.C. (signal false) c) IIL (low-level input current) = - 0,4 mA to 0,0 mA at VI = 0,5 V D.C.; d) IIH (high-level input current) = 0,0 mA to 0,1 mA at VI = 2,7 V D.C.; e) Minimum input hysteresis = 0,2 V D.C.
Fast-10	a) VIL (low-level input voltage) = 0,0 V D.C. to 0,8 V D.C. (signal true); b) VIH (high-level input voltage) = 2,0 V D.C. to 5,25 V D.C. (signal false) c) IIL (low-level input current) = ± 20 µA at VI = 0,5 V D.C.; d) IIH (high-level input current) = ± 20 µA at VI = 2,7 V D.C.; e) Minimum input hysteresis = 0,3 V D.C.
Fast-20	a) V_{IL} (low-level input voltage) = 1,0 V D.C. maximum (signal true); b) V_{IH} (high-level input voltage) = 1,9 V D.C. maximum (signal false) c) I_{IL} (low-level input current) = ± 20 µA at V_I = 0,5 V D.C.; d) I_{IH} (high-level input current) = ± 20 µA at V_I = 2,7 V D.C.; e) Minimum input hysteresis = 0,3 V D.C. NOTE 8 - Due to the tighter voltage thresholds for fast-20, the power supply should have a maximum ± 5% tolerance of the nominal voltage.
Fast-40	N/A

The transient leakage current that may occur (e.g. with some ESD protection circuits) at the time of physical insertion of an SCSI device is an exponentially decaying current that does not exceed the following specifications:

a) $I_{IH.HP}$ (hot-plug high-level input current peak value excluding the first 10ns) = + 1,5 mA at V_I = 2,7 V D.C.;
b) T_{HP} (transient current duration to 10 % of peak value) = 20 µs maximum.

SCSI devices with power-off should meet the above I_{IL} and I_{IH} electrical characteristics on each signal, except at time of physical insertion, when $I_{IH.HP}$ and T_{HP} prevail.

The nominal switching threshold should be 1,4 V D.C. to achieve maximum noise immunity and to ensure proper operation with complex cable configurations.

The REQ/REQQ and ACK/ACKQ receivers, after recognizing a negation transition, shall not respond to a signal reversal for at least 10 ns.

Editors Note 3 - GOP: The new wording for glitch filtering should be added here. Blank-out period - The time the receiver shall not respond to detected changes.

7.1.4 SE input and output characteristics

The SE signals shall have the characteristics defined in table 25 when measured at the SCSI device's

connector.

NOTE 9 - Devices with a careful board design using the latest semiconductor technology can lower the lumped capacitance to less than 16 pF. Devices without a switchable terminator can reduce this node capacitance even further. A decrease in lumped capacitance of the node and a uniform increase of the impedance along the SCSI bus towards an optimum value improves the margin and may allow for a greater number of attached devices. Backplane designs give the implementor the possibility of increasing the margins and connecting a greater number of devices to the bus.

Table 25 - SE input and output voltage characteristics

Maximum data rate	SE input and output voltage characteristics
Fast-5	a) Maximum signal capacitance = 25 pF, measured at the beginning of the stub (see annex G).
Fast-10	a) I_L (Leakage current) = -20 µA to + 20 µA at V_I = 0,0 V D.C. to 5,25 V D.C. (high-impedance state); b) Maximum signal capacitance = 25 pF, measured at the beginning of the stub (see annex G).
Fast-20	a) I_L (Leakage current) = -20 µA to + 20 µA at V_I = 0,0 V D.C. to 3,7 V D.C. (high-impedance state); b) Maximum signal capacitance = 25 pF, measured at the beginning of the stub (see annex G).
Fast-40	N/A

7.2 LVD alternative

7.2.1 LVD termination

The electrical characteristics of LVD bus termination shall be as specified in this section. Figure 24 shows the placement of the termination circuitry between the signals and the local ground.

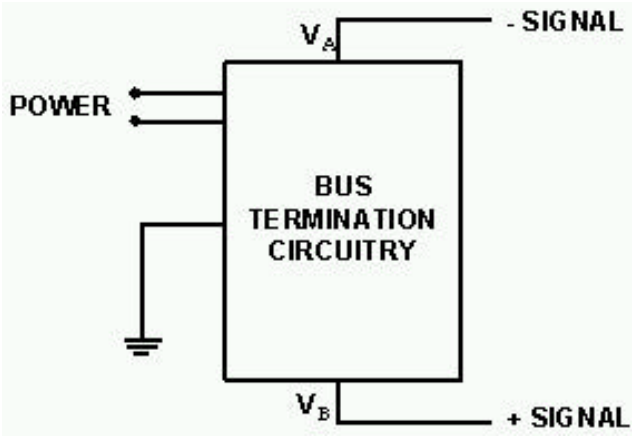


Figure 24 - Differential SPI-2 bus terminator

Electrical characteristics shall meet the requirements in figure 24 through figure 29, table 26, and table 27.

The requirements on the LVD bus termination that relate to differential impedance are specified in figure 25, figure 26, and table 26. Figure 26 and table 26 show the allowed ranges for I and V in figure 25.

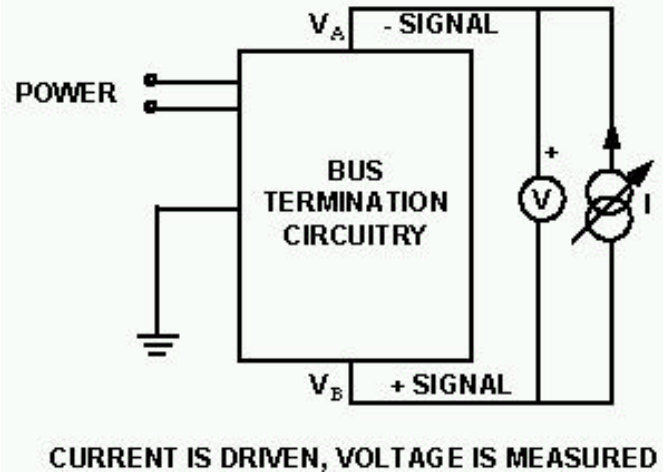


Figure 25 - Test circuit for terminator differential impedance

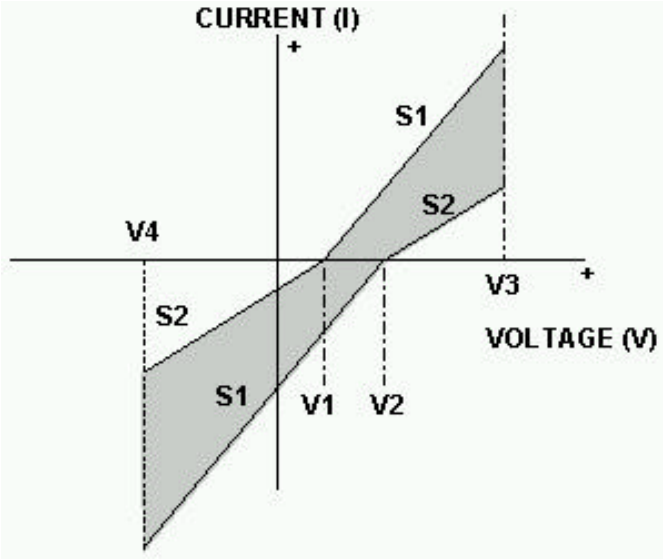


Figure 26 - Termination I-V characteristics for differential and common mode impedance tests

The requirements that relate to common mode impedance are specified in figure 27 and table 26. Table 26 specifies the allowed ranges for I and V in figure 27. The terminator bias voltage V_{bias} shall be between V_1 and V_2 in figure 26 and table 26.

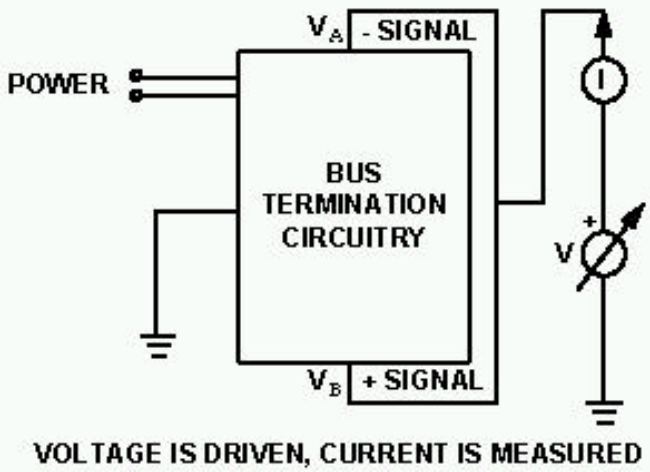


Figure 27 - Test circuit for termination common mode impedance test

Table 26 - I-V requirements for LVD impedance and common mode impedance tests

Parameter (figure 26)	LVD impedance tests (note) (figure 25)	Common mode impedance tests (note) (figure 27)
V1 (mV)	100	1125
V2 (mV)	125	1375
V3 (V)	1,0	2,0
V4 (V)	-1,0	0,5
S1 (ohms)	100	100
S2 (ohms)	110	300
Frequency	D.C.	D.C.
Note: $V_A + V_B = 2,5 \pm 0,2$ V (figure 25)		

The requirements on termination that relate to electrical balance are specified in figure 28, figure 29, and table 27. The voltage V in figure 28 is varied over frequencies of 0 to 40 MHz with amplitude varied over the range V_{MIN} TO V_{MAX} specified in table 27 while the voltage named ΔV in figure 28 is measured. The maximum difference between values of ΔV (ΔV in figure 28) measured during this test shall be as specified in table 27.

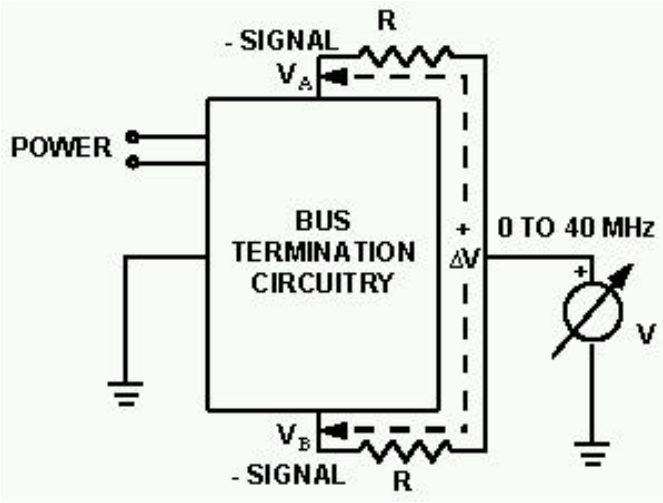


Figure 28 - Termination balance test configuration

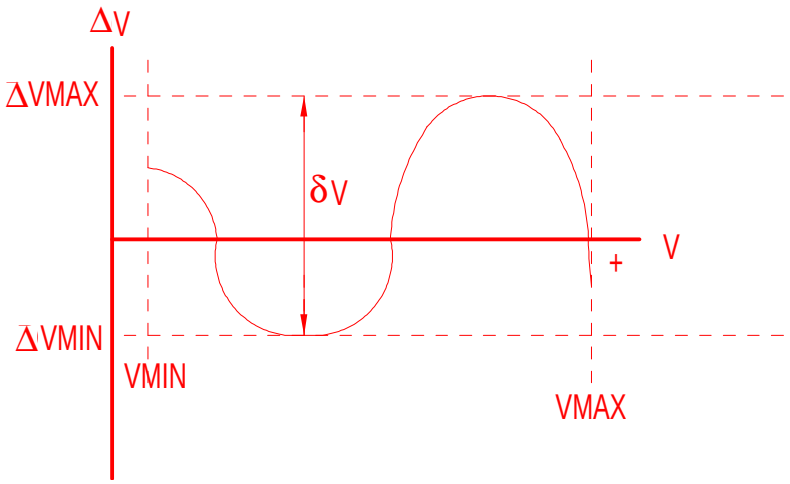


Figure 29 - Termination balance test data definition

Table 27 - Parameters for LVD termination balance test

Parameter	LVD
V_{MIN} (V) (peak)	0,7
V_{MAX} (V) (peak)	1.8
R (ohms)	100 ± 0,01%
ΔV	20 mV max
Note: ΔV - Input impedance for instrumentation > 10 Kohms V swept without interruption between V_{MIN} and V_{MAX}	

7.2.2 LVD driver characteristics

Low voltage differential drivers shall conform to the architecture specified in figure 30.

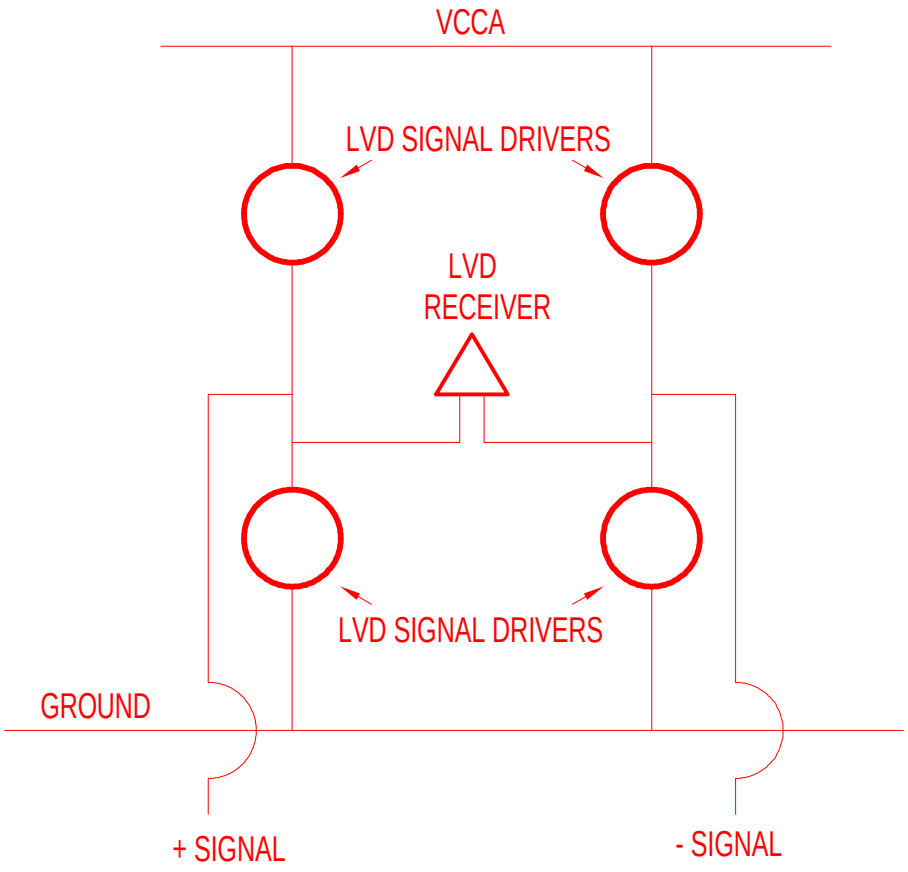


Figure 30 - LVD transceiver architecture

The LVD driver consists of balanced asymmetrical sources that provide current from V_{CCA} to one signal line while sinking the same current to ground from the other signal line. Diagonally opposite sources

operate together to produce a signal assertion or a signal negation. An assertion is produced when V_{CCA} current is sourced to the + signal line and the - signal line returns current to ground. A negation is produced when V_{CCA} current is sourced to the - signal line and the + signal line returns current to ground.

Balanced transmissions occur when the changes in +SIGNAL current and the changes in the -SIGNAL current precisely cancel each other. Asymmetrical transmissions occur when the intensity of the assertion signal is different from the intensity of the negation signal. Balance is important to reduce EMI and common mode signals. Asymmetry is important to compensate for the negation biasing effects of the LVD terminators. In order to maintain good timing margins LVD drivers need to have asymmetrical outputs. The requirement for balance and the requirement for asymmetry are not antagonistic to each other but rather are largely separate design criteria.

LVD drivers shall meet the specifications in annex A.

7.2.2.1 Management of LVD release glitches

Under some conditions, an LVD signal that transitions from actively negated to released may cause brief pulses to the true signal state. These pulses are called “release glitches” and may last up to a bus settle delay. Some modifications to SCSI protocol are defined in this subclause to avoid adverse affects from release glitches.

SCSI devices shall incorporate the requirements specified in table 28 when using LVD drivers and optionally may incorporate the requirements when using other drivers. The usage of active negation increases cross talk noise margin and improves the true-to-false transition speed as compared to passive negation.

Table 28 - Glitch management requirements for devices using LVD drivers

Signals	Mode	Active negation	Transmitting device	Receiving device
BSY, SEL, RST	I,T	P		
ACK, ATN	I	R	The initiator shall wait for a BUS FREE phase (note) before releasing the ACK and ATN signals from the actively negated state.	Starting no later than a Bus Settle Delay after releasing the BSY signal, the target shall ignore the ACK and ATN signals until a subsequent connection.
REQ	T	R	The target shall wait 2,5*Bus Settle Delay after releasing the BSY signal before releasing the REQ signal from the actively negated state.	The initiator shall ignore the REQ signal within 1,5*Bus Settle Delay of the transition of the BSY signal from true to false
C/D, I/O, MSG	T	R	After a selection or reselection phase, these signals shall not be released until the BSY signal is released.	
DATA BUS (SELECTION and RSELECTION phases)	I,T	P	The transmitting device shall release all false data bits during these phases.	
DATA BUS (During information transfers)	I,T	R		
Key: I = initiator; P = prohibited; R = required; T = target				
Note: BUS FREE phase starts a Bus Settle Delay after the BSY and SEL signals are both false.				

7.2.3 LVD receiver characteristics

LVD receivers shall conform to the architecture specified in. An example of an LVD receiver is shown in figure 31. LVD receivers shall meet the requirements in annex A.

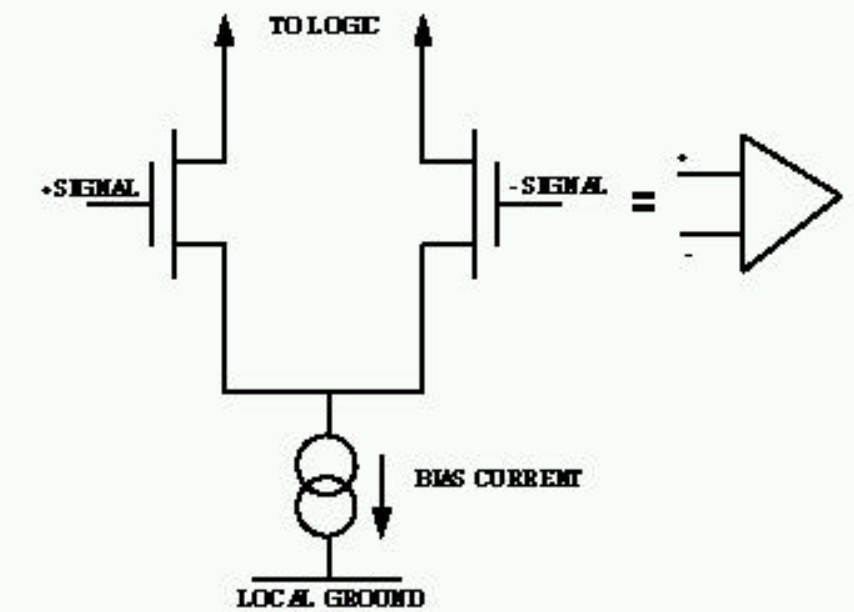


Figure 31 - LVD receiver example

7.2.4 LVD input and output characteristics

Capacitive loads on differential SCSI busses shall meet the requirements specified in this section.

There are three components to differential SCSI bus capacitive loading: - Signal to local ground (C1), + Signal to local ground (C2), and - signal to + signal (C3) as shown in. The values C1, C2, and C3 represent measurements between the indicated points and do not represent discrete capacitors. Capacitance measurements shall be made with a nominal 1MHz source with the same nominal D.C. level on the + signal and the - signal. This D.C. level is specified in. The driving source from the instrumentation shall apply an A.C. signal level less than 100 mV rms.

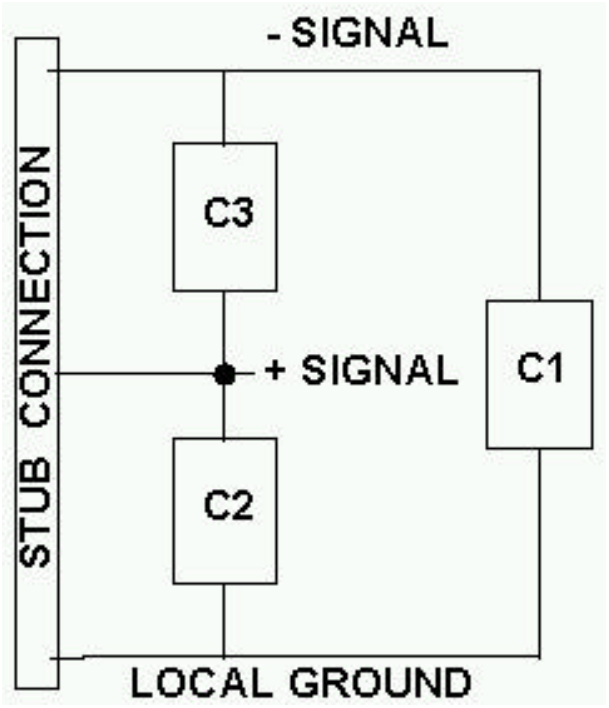


Figure 32 - Capacitive electrical loads

Table 29 - Values for differential SCSI capacitive device loads

Capacitance measurement	Maximum	Notes
C1 (pF)	20	@V=0,7 to 1,8 V D.C. -sig/gnd
C2 (pF)	20	@V=0,7 to 1,8 V D.C. +sig/gnd
C3 (pF)	10	@V=0,7 to 1,8 V D.C. both - and +sig/gnd V is the same for both sigs ±100mV
|C1 - C2| (pF)	0,5	REQ, ACK, DATA and PARITY (same signal)
|C1 - C2| (pF)	3	all other signals (same signal)
|C1(i) - C1(REQ)| (pF)	2	For DATA(i) i = 0-15 and PARITY (i) i = 0,1
|C2(i) - C2(REQ)| (pF)	2	For DATA(i) i = 0-15 and PARITY (i) i = 0,1
|C1(i) - C1(ACK)| (pF)	2	For DATA(i) i = 0-15 and PARITY (i) i = 0,1
|C2(i) - C2(ACK)| (pF)	2	For DATA(i) i = 0-15 and PARITY (i) i = 0,1

Devices containing the enabled bus termination shall have maximum values 1.5 times the maximums listed in. Differential bus termination circuitry that is not part of a device shall have maximum values 0.5 times the maximums listed in.

7.2.5 SE/HVD transmission mode detection

Transmission mode detection by LVD SCSI devices of SE and HVD SCSI devices is accomplished through the use of the DIFFSENS line. Requirements for devices, terminators, and interconnect media for DIFFSENS are not the same as for "signal" lines because DIFFSENS is driven and detected using its own SE transmission and detection scheme.

LVD termination shall drive the DIFFSENS line as specified in 7.2.5.1 and LVD devices shall sense the DIFFSENS signal as specified in 7.2.5.2.

Devices and terminators connected to the DIFFSENS line shall comply with the requirements in table 22.

7.2.5.1 LVD DIFFSENS driver

The LVD DIFFSENS driver sets a voltage level on the DIFFSENS line that uniquely defines a LVD transmission mode. LVD terminators and multimode terminators (see 7.3.1) shall provide a LVD DIFFSENS driver according to the specifications in table 30.

Table 30 - LVD DIFFSENS driver specifications

Parameter	max.	nominal	min.	notes
V_O (volts) when I_O = 0 to 5 mA	1,4	1,3	1,2	
I_{OS} (mA)	15	5		With TERMPWR at operational levels and V_O = 0.
|Input current D.C.| (µA)	10			With terminator disabled.
Input sick current D.C. (µA) at V_O = 2.75V	200		20	Required to provide noise return path to ground and to ensure the HVD DIFFSENS drivers dominate the LVD DIFFSENS drivers.

Note:
- All requirements apply at the terminator bussing connection (see figure 4).
- All measurements per figure 33.

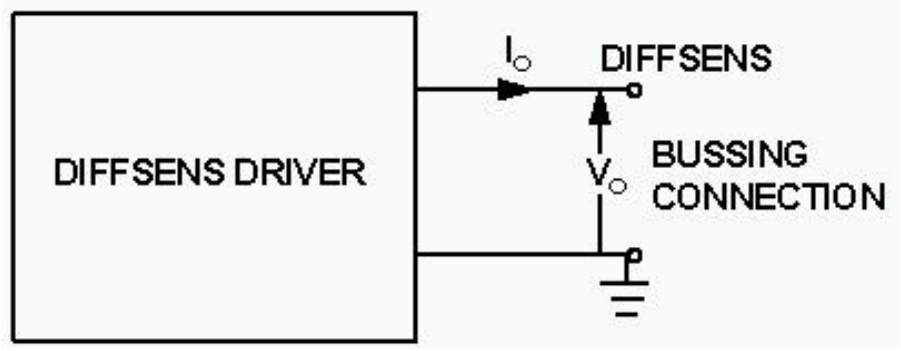


Figure 33 - LVD DIFFSENS driver signal definitions

7.2.5.2 LVD DIFFSENS receiver

LVD devices shall incorporate a LVD DIFFSENS receiver that detects the voltage level on the DIFFSENS line for purposes of informing the device of the transmission mode being used by the bus. The LVD DIFFSENS receiver shall be capable of detecting SE, LVD, and HVD devices. Table 31 and figure 34 define the receiver input levels for each of the three modes.

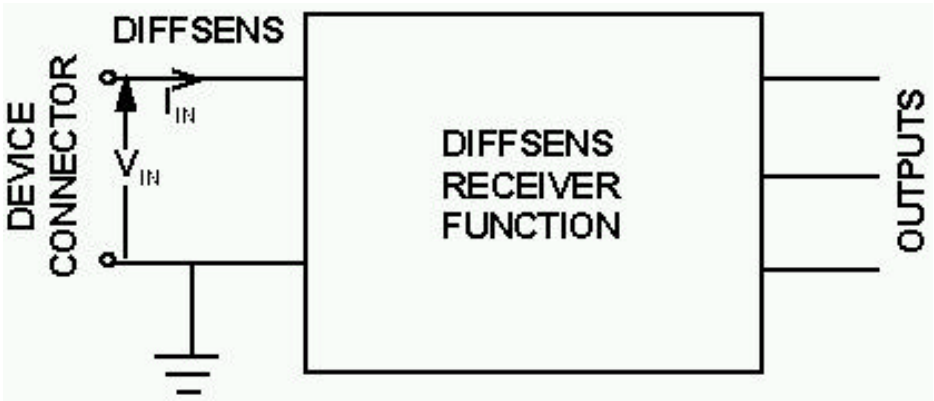


Figure 34 - DIFFSENS receiver function

Table 31 - DIFFSENS receiver operating requirements

V_{in} range	Sensed differential driver type
-0,35V to +0,5V	SE
GT +0,5V to LT 0,9V	indeterminate for detecting a differential driver type
0,7V to 1,9V	LVD
GT 1,9V to LT 2,4V	indeterminate for detecting a differential driver type
2,4V to 5.5V	HVD

Note:
Input resistance (Vin/Iin) shall be 200 Kohms @ Vin < 2,7V under all conditions of power supply (i.e., power on, power off, power transients)
All voltages measured at the device connector with respect to local ground.

The input resistance requirement is for purposes of providing ground reference if no DIFFSENS drivers are connected to the bus and to ensure that the DIFFSENS receivers do not load the DIFFSENS drivers excessively. Higher input resistance values are allowed if the system integrator can guarantee that the resistor value chosen will overcome all leakage from devices on the bus and will therefore produce reliable SE mode detection (see table 31).

Devices shall not allow the signal drivers to leave the high impedance state during initial power on until both of the following conditions are satisfied:

a) the device is capable of full logical operation for at least 100 ms, and

NOTE 10 - Note: The 100 ms delay allows time for the DIFFSENS pin to connect after the initial power connection (in the case of insertion of a device into an active system), or allows time for the power distribution system to settle.

b) the DIFFSENS mode detected has remained stable for an additional 100 ms after a) is achieved.

A device shall not change its present signal driver or receiver mode based on the DIFFSENS voltage level unless a new mode is sensed continuously for at least 100 ms.

A possible implementation of an LVD DIFFSENS receiver is shown in figure 35. Note the reference voltage tolerance is greater on the higher voltage reference. This allows a simple resistor divider between VCC and ground for the references. The 100 ms requirement would be implemented in logic in this example and is not shown in the figure 35.

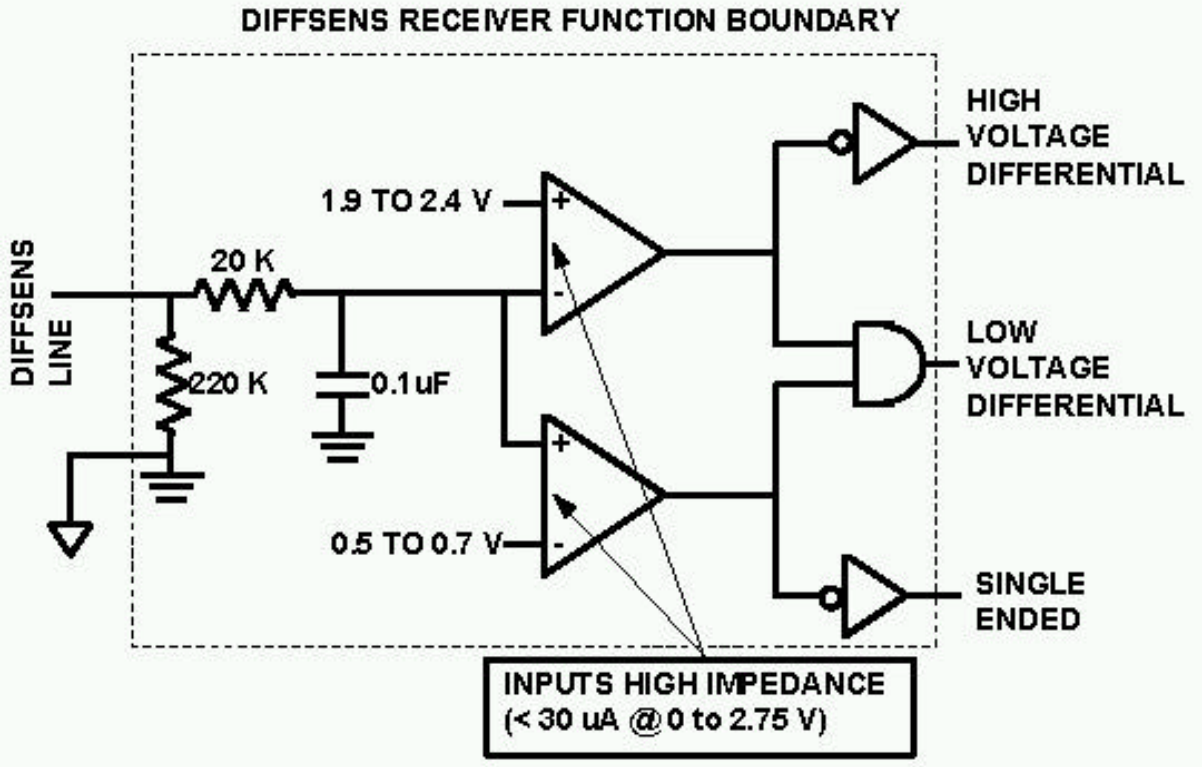


Figure 35 - LVD DIFFSENS receiver example

7.3 LVD/SE multimode alternative

7.3.1 LVD/SE multimode termination

Figure 36 shows the architecture of the multimode terminator.

Multimode terminators sense the DIFFSENS line while sourcing the DIFFSENS signal with the LVD levels (see table 30). The DIFFSENS line being grounded indicates that one or more SE or terminators are attached to the bus. A multimode terminator switches to the termination mode that is appropriate for the bus based on the value of the DIFFSENS input voltage. The appropriate mode is indicated in table 31.

When operating in the LVD mode the requirements in 7.2 apply. When operating in the SE mode SE termination shall be used and the requirements in 7.1 shall apply.

Multimode terminators are required to provide a ground driver (similar to that described in for multimode transceivers) for purposes of establishing a ground reference for the SE transmission lines. The ground driver shall turn on and remain on while the DIFFSENS line indicates SE operation. When turned on ground drivers shall appear resistive with the following performance requirements: <0,5V @ +5 mA, >-0,5V @ - 5 mA.

The requirements on the multimode terminator ground driver are different from those for the multimode transceiver ground driver because the devices provide the bulk of the grounding. Devices may be located far from the ends of the bus where ground references are more important.

NOTE 11 - There will be at least one hard ground on the +SIGNAL line when operating in SE mode (caused by the devices and/or terminators that are conventional SE). This hard ground provides a return path for any low frequency currents in the + SIGNAL line.

NOTE 12 - It may be necessary to add capacitance to the - SIGNAL line to balance the capacitance of the ground driver when operating in LVD mode.

Caution: When operating in an HVD environment the voltage on a termination contact may reach as high as 15 V above local ground due to allowed common mode levels for HVD. Multimode termination is not recommended for HVD environments unless the common mode voltages in the environment are controlled to safe levels for SE and LVD devices.

If the common mode voltages in the environment are not controlled to safe levels for SE and LVD devices and HVD operation is indicated by the DIFFSENS line all signals shall be set to a high impedance state (> 100K ohms to the local ground).

NOTE 13 - When using only the SCA-2 connector (see 5.1.4) the SE, LVD, and HVD connector contact numbers allow switching between all three modes. In this case the terminator may switch to HVD mode if so indicated by the DIFFSENS line.

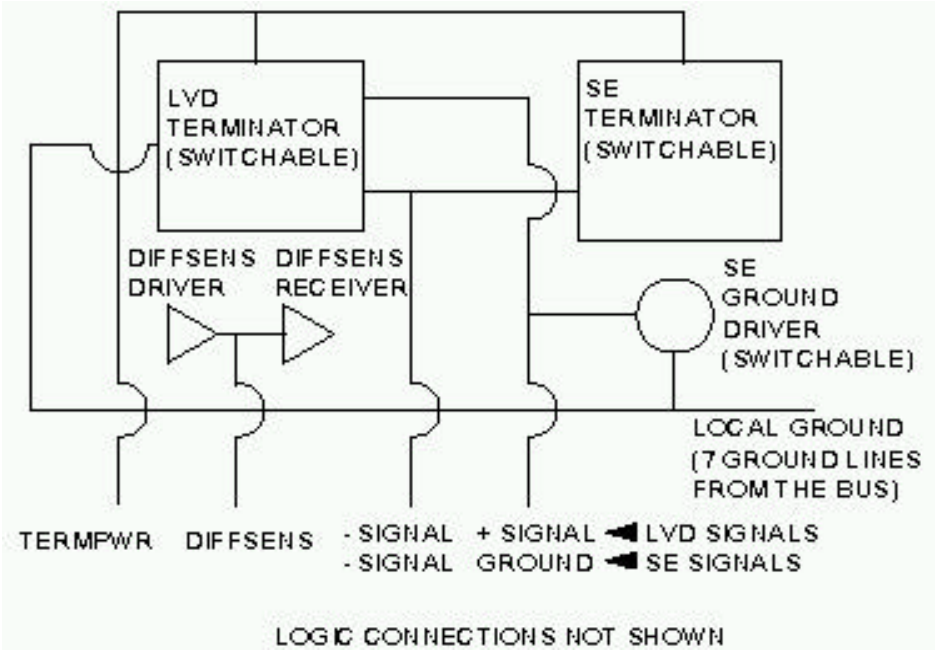


Figure 36 - Multimode terminator architecture

7.3.2 LVD/SE multimode transceiver characteristics

The architecture for the multimode transceiver is shown in figure 37.

The contact assignments in provide functional alignment of the pins between SE and LVD for all forms of connector. This alignment allows a single interface to supply either SE or LVD transceivers within the same device. It is not the intent to define a dynamically changing transmission mode but rather to prevent incompatible devices from attempting to interoperate.

Caution: When operating in an HVD environment the voltage on a transceiver contact may reach as high as 15 V above local ground due to high allowed common mode levels for HVD. Multimode transceivers are not recommended for exposure to HVD environments unless the common mode voltages in the environment are controlled to safe levels for SE and LVD devices.

Multimode transceivers shall be set to the appropriate mode by sensing the output of the DIFFSENS receiver. If the DIFFSENS receiver indicates SE mode the multimode transceiver shall follow the SE requirements in 7.1. If the DIFFSENS line indicates LVD mode the multimode transceiver shall follow the requirements in 7.2. If HVD operation is indicated by the DIFFSENS receiver all signals shall be set to a high impedance state (> 100K ohms to the local ground).

NOTE 14 - Protocol chips may offer SE Fast-40 signals to drive separate LVD or HVD transceivers. These Fast-40 SE signals are not presently specified for direct connection to a SPI-2 bus.

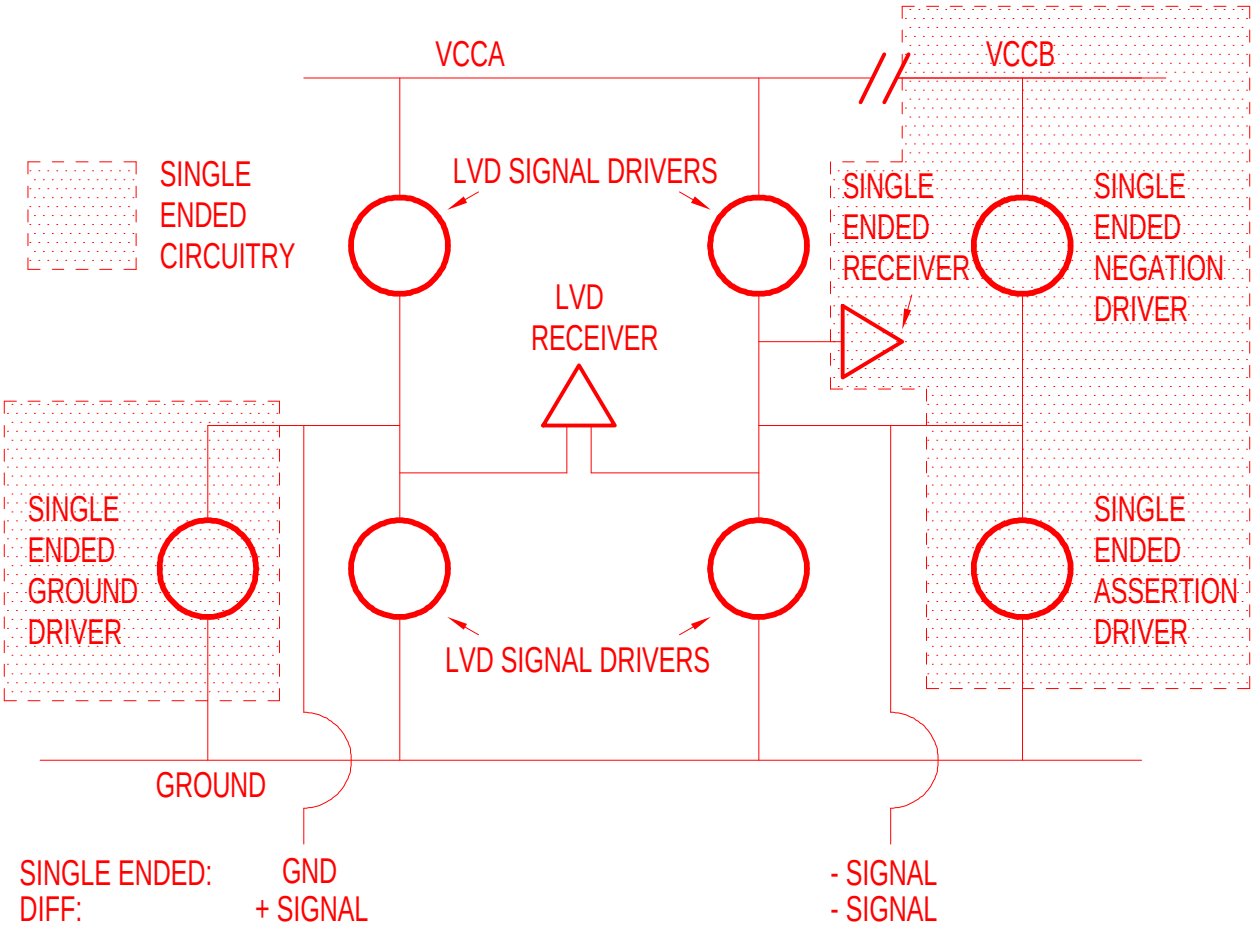


Figure 37 - Multimode transceiver architecture

7.3.3 Power for LVD/SE multimode transceivers

Power for the differential transceivers may be supplied from a different source than the power for the SE transceivers. This enables the SE voltage levels while allowing the differential transceivers to have lower voltages to reduce chip power or for compatibility with low voltage logic levels.

7.3.4 Ground drivers

When using the universal driver architecture described in figure 40 a SE driver is required for the ground side of the driver. This ground driver provides the connection to ground for the single ended ground line associated with the SE - signal line. In a non-universal SE driver condition this ground connection is provided by a hard ground. With a universal driver, this pin may not be hard grounded or the differential mode will not operate properly.

When turned on, ground drivers shall appear resistive with the following performance requirements: <0.5V @ +25 mA, >- 0.5V @ - 25 mA. Ground drivers shall remain on for the entire time the device is powered and is sensing a SE transmission mode from the DIFFSENS receiver. Ground drivers are not required to implement any slew rate controls.

7.4 HVD alternative

7.4.1 HVD termination

7.4.1.1 HVD termination for data rates up to and including Fast-20

All SCSI bus signals are common among all devices connected to the bus. All signal lines shall be terminated at both ends with a terminator that is compatible with the type of transceivers used in the SCSI devices. The termination points define the ends of the bus. These termination points may be internal to an SCSI device.

NOTE 15 - If the termination is provided within an SCSI device, that device should not be removed from the SCSI bus while the bus is in use.

All HVD signals consist of two lines denoted +SIGNAL and -SIGNAL. A signal is true when +SIGNAL is more positive than -SIGNAL, and a signal is false when -SIGNAL is more positive than +SIGNAL. All assigned HVD signals described in table 10, table 11, and table 12 except TERMPWR, RESERVED, and GROUND shall be terminated at each end of the cable with a terminator network as shown in figure 38. Resistor tolerances in the terminator network shall be ± 5% or less. The characteristic impedance of HVD terminators is 122 ohms

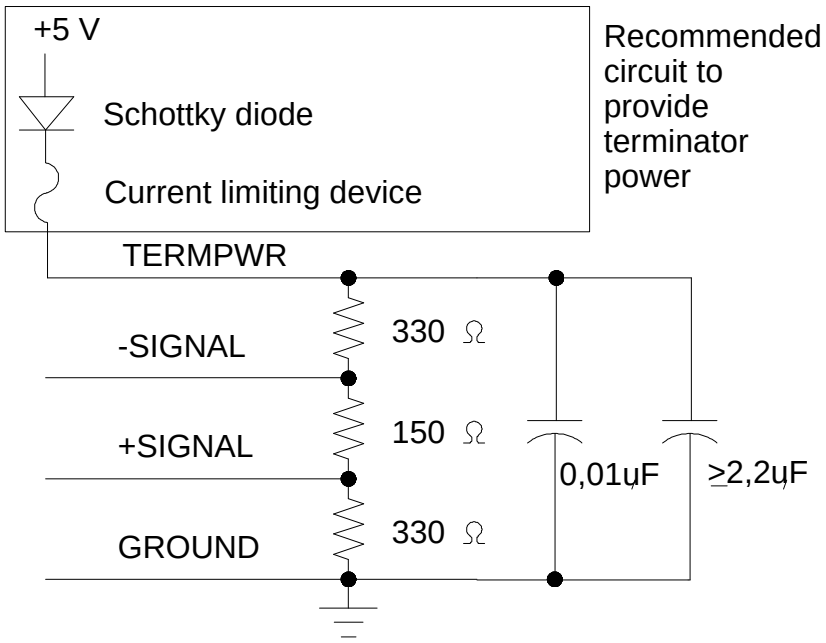


Figure 38 - Termination for HVD devices

7.4.1.2 HVD termination for all data rates

The electrical characteristics of HVD bus termination shall be as specified in this section. Figure 24 shows the placement of the termination circuitry between the signals and the local ground.

Electrical characteristics shall meet the requirements in figure 24 through figure 29, table 32, and table 33.

The requirements on the HVD bus termination that relate to differential impedance are specified in figure 25, figure 26, and table 32. Figure 26 and table 32 show the allowed ranges for I and V in figure 25.

The requirements that relate to common mode impedance are specified in figure 25 and table 32. Table 32 specifies the allowed ranges for I and V in figure 25.

Table 32 - I-V requirements for HVD impedance and common mode impedance tests

Parameter (figure 26)	HVD impedance tests (note) (figure 25)	Common mode impedance tests (note) (figure 27)
V1 (mV)	1050	1920
V2 (mV)	650	2860
V3 (V)	6,0	12,0
V4 (V)	-6,0	-7,0
S1 (ohms)	115	145
S2 (ohms)	130	200
Frequency	D.C.	D.C.
Note: $V_A + V_B = 2,5 \pm 0,2$ V (figure 25)		

The requirements on termination that relate to electrical balance are specified in figure 28, figure 29, and table 33. The voltage V in figure 28 is varied over frequencies of 0 to 40 MHz with amplitude varied over the range V_{MIN} TO V_{MAX} specified in table 33 while the voltage named ΔV in figure 28 is measured. The maximum difference between values of ΔV (ΔV in figure 28) measured during this test shall be as specified in table 33.

Table 33 - Parameters for HVD termination balance test

Parameter	HVD
V_{MIN} (V) (peak)	-7,0
V_{MAX} (V) (peak)	12,0
R (ohms)	100 ± 0,01%
ΔV	20 mV max
Note: ΔV - Input impedance for instrumentation > 10 Kohms V swept without interruption between V_{MIN} and V_{MAX}	

7.4.2 HVD output characteristics

Each HVD signal sourced by an SCSI device shall have the output characteristics defined in table 34 when measured at the SCSI device's connector.

All HVD drivers shall maintain the high-output impedance during power-on and power-off cycles.

Table 34 - HVD output voltage characteristics

Maximum data rate	HVD output voltage characteristics

Fast-5	a) V_{OL} (low-level output voltage) = 1,7 maximum at I_{OL} (low-level output current = 55 mA;
	b) V_{OH} (high-level output voltage) = 2,7 minimum at I_{OH} (high-level output current = -55 mA;
	c) V_{OD} (HVD output voltage) = 1,0 minimum with common-mode voltage ranges from -7V D.C. to +12 V D.C.;
	d) shall conform to EIA TIA RS-485.
	
	V_{OL} and V_{OH} shall be as measured between the output terminal and the SCSI device's logic ground reference.

Fast-10	a) V_{OD} (HVD output voltage) = 1,0 V minimum; b) shall conform to EIA TIA RS-485. The test circuit for testing these characteristics is shown in figure 39.
Fast-20	a) shall conform to EIA TIA RS-485. The test circuit for testing these characteristics is shown in figure 39.
Fast-40	a) shall conform to EIA TIA RS-485. HVD drivers for Fast-40 need not comply with the ISO/IEC 8482:1993(E) requirement that the difference in differential output voltages magnitudes between opposite binary states be less than 0.2 V. Note: these additional requirements for driver asymmetry do not affect the operation of these HVD drivers at Fast-20 and lower data transfer rates. In the test circuit for testing these characteristics is shown in figure 39 the magnitude of the steady state differential output voltage of a Fast-40 HVD driver shall comply with the following requirements: 1 V ($\|V_A\|$ or $\|V_N\|$ (6 V and 0.42 $\|V_N\|$ + 0.69 V ($\|V_A\|$ (2.49 $\|V_N\|$ - 1.59 V where $\|V_A\|$ and $\|V_N\|$ are defined as "V_{OD}" in figure 39.

.

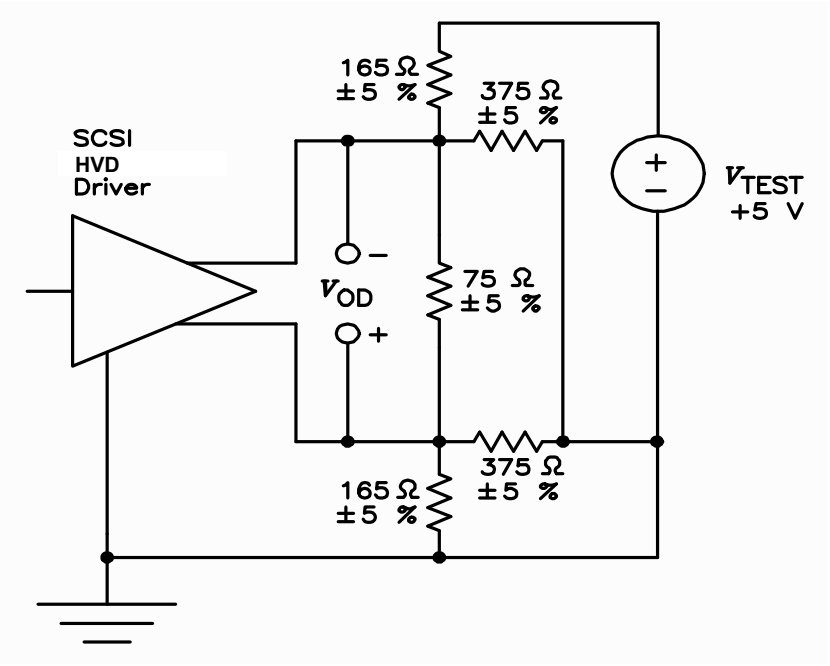


Figure 39 - HVD test circuit

7.4.3 HVD input characteristics

Each HVD signal shall have the input characteristics defined in table 35 when measured at the SCSI device's connector (including both receivers and disabled drivers).

Table 35 - HVD input voltage characteristics

<table>
<tr><th>Max data rate</th><th>HVD input voltage characteristics</th></tr>
<tr><td>Fast-5</td><td>SCSI devices shall meet the following electrical characteristics on each signal (including both receivers and passive drivers):

a) I_I (input current on either input) = ± 2,0 mA maximum;
b) maximum input capacitance = 25 pF;
c) input characteristics shall conform to EIA TIA RS-485.

The I_I requirement shall me met with the input voltage varying between -7V D.C. and +12V D.C., with power on or off, and with the hysteresis equaling 35 mV, minimum.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fast-10</td><td>a) conform to EIA TIA RS-485;
b) exhibit at least 35 mV of hysteresis;
c) measure no more than 25 pF of capacitance.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fast-20</td><td>a) conform to EIA TIA RS-485;
b) exhibit at least 35 mV of hysteresis;
c) measure no more than 25 pF of capacitance.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fast-40</td><td>a) conform to EIA TIA RS-485;
b) exhibit at least 35 mV of hysteresis
c) see table 36 for capacitance loading
d) Devices containing the enabled bus termination shall have maximum values 1.5 times the maximums listed in table 36. Differential bus termination circuitry that is not part of a device shall have maximum values 0.5 times the maximums listed in table 36;

Table 36 - Values for HVD SCSI capacitive device loads

<table>
<tr><th>Capacitance</th><th>Max</th><th>Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td>C1 (pF)</td><td>30</td><td>@V= -7 to 12V D.C. -sig/gnd</td></tr>
<tr><td>C2 (pF)</td><td>30</td><td>@V=-7 to 12V D.C. +sig/gnd</td></tr>
<tr><td>C3 (pF)</td><td>15</td><td>@V=-7 to 12V D.C. both - and +sig/gnd
V is the same for both sigs ±100mV</td></tr>
<tr><td>|C1 - C2| (pF)</td><td>0,5</td><td>REQ, ACK, DATA and PARITY (same signal)</td></tr>
<tr><td>|C1 - C2| (pF)</td><td>3</td><td>all other signals (same signal)</td></tr>
<tr><td>|C1(i) - C1(REQ)| (pF)</td><td>2</td><td>For DATA(i) i = 0-15 and PARITY (i) i = 0,1</td></tr>
<tr><td>|C2(i) - C2(REQ)| (pF)</td><td>2</td><td>For DATA(i) i = 0-15 and PARITY (i) i = 0,1</td></tr>
<tr><td>|C1(i) - C1(ACK)| (pF)</td><td>2</td><td>For DATA(i) i = 0-15 and PARITY (i) i = 0,1</td></tr>
<tr><td>|C2(i) - C2(ACK)| (pF)</td><td>2</td><td>For DATA(i) i = 0-15 and PARITY (i) i = 0,1</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

7.4.4 Signal-ended driver protection

Transmission mode detection by SE SCSI devices of HVD SCSI devices is accomplished through the use of the DIFFSENS line. The DIFFSENS signal is a SE signal that is used as an active high enable for the differential drivers. If a SE device or terminator is inadvertently connected, this line is grounded, disabling the differential drivers (see figure 40). Devices and terminators that only support SE shall connect the DIFFSENS line to local ground.

Requirements for devices, terminators, and interconnect media for DIFFSENS are not the same as for "signal" lines because DIFFSENS is driven and detected using its own SE transmission and detection scheme.

HVD devices shall implement a DIFFSENS driver and receiver that have equivalent performance to the circuit shown in figure 40. HVD terminators are not involved with DIFFSENS except that they shall not ground the line.

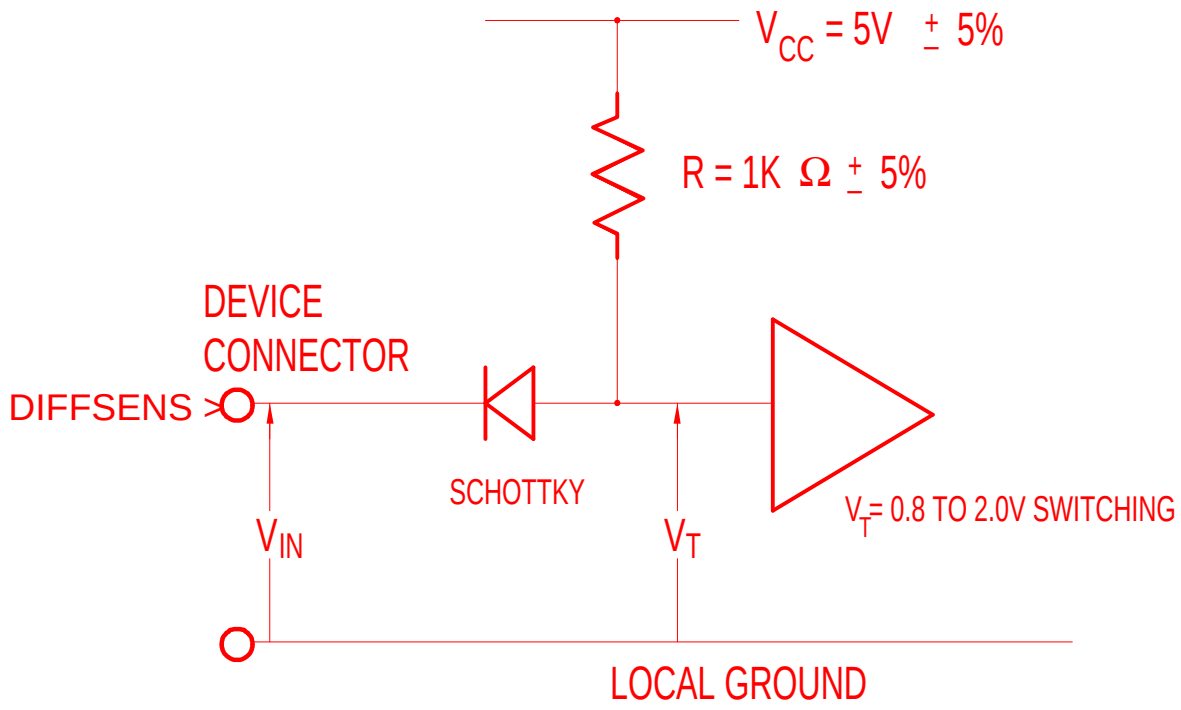


Figure 40 - SE driver protection circuit

Devices and terminators connected to the DIFFSENS line shall comply with the requirements in table 22.

7.5 Terminator power

Provision shall be made to provide power from one or more sources to the TERMPWR lines of the SCSI bus. This power shall be supplied through a low forward drop diode or similar semiconductor that prevents backflow of power if one of the sources of TERMPWR is powered-off.

Bus terminators shall be powered from at least one source of termination power (TERMPWR). The TERMPWR lines in the cable are available for distribution of TERMPWR. Direct connection between the TERMPWR source and the individual terminators without using the TERMPWR line is also allowed.

If the TERMPWR source is connected to the cable TERMPWR line, the source shall be isolated in a manner that prevents sinking of current from the TERMPWR line into the TERMPWR source (for example

if the TERMPWR source voltage falls below the voltage existing on the TERMPWR line, current would be sunk into the TERMPWR source unless unidirectional isolation is present in the TERMPWR source).

Regulatory agencies may require limiting maximum (short circuit) current to the TERMPWR lines. These requirements generally mandate the use of current limiting circuits and may restrict the number of sources provided for TERMPWR.

The terminator power characteristics at the terminator, per terminator shall be as defined in table 37.

Table 37 - Terminator power characteristics at the terminator

Terminator power characteristics	Terminator type						
	SE			LVD	SE/LVD (Multimode)	HVD	
	A cable	P cable/Q cable				A cable	P cable/ Q cable
		0,2 V dropout regulator	general				
I_{min} (A) @ V_{min}	0,35	0,6	0,6	0,5	0,65	0,6	1,0
V_{min} (V) @ I_{min}	4,0	2,7	4,0	3,0	3,0	4,0	4,0
V_{max} (V) @ all conditions	5,25	5,25	5,25	5,25	5,25	5,25	5,25
Note: The recommended TERMPWR current limiting is 2,0 amps.							

NOTE 16 - SCSI devices connected with a SE A cable (table 3) cannot meet the source current requirements in table 37 unless the TERMPWR conductor size is 0,080 98 mm^2 (28 AWG) minimum because the SE A cable contains only one TERMPWR line.

NOTE 17 - It is recommended that SCSI device connected with the nonshielded alternative 2 connectors (see 5.1.2) that provide terminator power use keyed connectors to prevent accidental grounding or the incorrect connection of terminator power.

It is recommended that the terminator power lines be decoupled at each terminator with at least a 2,2 µF capacitor to improve signal quality.

The TERMPWR lines may be used for distribution of power for purposes other than for SCSI bus termination as long as the voltage delivered to the SCSI bus terminators remains adequate to supply the requirements of the terminators under all conditions of SCSI bus operation and under all conditions of other loading.

8 SCSI bus signals

Information transfer on the SCSI bus is allowed between only two SCSI devices at any given time. The maximum number of devices is determined by the width of the data path implemented. The devices can be any combination of initiators (or initiator ports) and targets (or target ports), provided there is at least one of each.

Each SCSI device has an SCSI address and a corresponding SCSI ID bit assigned to it. When two SCSI devices communicate on the SCSI bus, one acts as an initiator and the other acts as a target. An initiator originates an I/O process and the target performs the I/O process.

NOTE 18 - An SCSI device is usually fixed as an initiator or target, but some devices may be able to assume either.

Table 38 shows the relationship between SCSI Addresses, SCSI IDs, and arbitration priority. A hyphen ("-") represents a logical zero bit.

.

Table 38 - Arbitration priorities by SCSI ID

SCSI address	DB31	DB30	DB29	DB28	DB27	DB26	DB25	DB24	DB23	DB22	DB21	DB20	DB19	DB18	DB17	DB16	DB15	DB14	DB13	DB12	DB11	DB10	DB9	DB8	DB7	DB6	DB5	DB4	DB3	DB2	DB1	DB0	Priority
7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1
6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	2
5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	3
4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	4
3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	5
2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	6
1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	7
0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	8
15	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	9
14	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	10
13	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	11
12	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	12
11	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	13
10	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	14
9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	15
8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	16
23	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	17
22	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	18
21	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	19
20	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	20
19	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	21
18	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	22
17	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	23
16	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	24
31	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	25
30	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	26
29	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	27
28	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	28
27	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	29
26	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	30
25	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	31
24	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	32

8.1 Signal descriptions

BSY (BUSY). An "OR-tied" signal that indicates that the SCSI bus is in use.

SEL (SELECT). An "OR-tied" signal used by an initiator to select a target or by a target to reselect an initiator.

C/D (CONTROL/DATA). A signal sourced by a target that indicates whether control or data information is

on the DATA BUS. True indicates CONTROL.

I/O (INPUT/OUTPUT). A signal sourced by a target that controls the direction of data movement on the DATA BUS with respect to an initiator. True indicates INPUT. This signal is also used to distinguish between SELECTION and RESELECTION phases.

MSG (MESSAGE). A signal sourced by a target to indicate the MESSAGE phase. True indicates MESSAGE.

REQ (REQUEST). A signal sourced by a target to indicate a request for an information transfer on the primary buses data path.

REQQ (REQUEST). A signal sourced by a target to indicate a request for an information transfer on the secondary buses data path.

ACK (ACKNOWLEDGE). A signal sourced by an initiator to respond with an acknowledgment of an information transfer on the primary buses data path.

ACKQ (ACKNOWLEDGE). A signal sourced by an initiator to respond with an acknowledgment of an information transfer on the secondary buses data path.

ATN (ATTENTION). A signal sourced by an initiator to indicate the ATTENTION condition.

RST (RESET). An "OR-tied" signal that indicates the RESET condition.

DB(7-0,P) (8-bit DATA BUS). Eight data-bit signals, plus a parity-bit signal that form the 8-bit DATA BUS. DB(P) shall contain odd parity for DB(7-0). Bit significance and priority during arbitration are shown in table 38.

DB(15-0,P,P1) (16-bit DATA BUS). Sixteen data-bit signals, plus two parity-bit signals that form the 16-bit DATA BUS. DB(P,P1) shall contain odd parity for DB(7-0) and DB(15-8), respectively. Bit significance and priority during arbitration are shown in table 38.

DB(31-0,P,P1,P2,P3) (32-bit DATA BUS). Thirty-two data-bit signals, plus four parity-bit signals that form the 32-bit DATA BUS. DB(P,P1,P2,P3) shall contain odd parity for DB(7-0), DB(15-8), DB(23-16), and DB(31-24), respectively. Bit significance and priority during arbitration are shown in table 38.

8.2 Parity checking rules

Valid parity is determined by rules in table 39.

.

Table 39 - Parity checking rules

Check for odd parity on:	If at least one bit is active on:
DB(7-0),P	DB(31-0,P,P1,P2,P3)
DB(15-8),P1	DB(31-8,P1,P2,P3)
DB(23-16),P2	DB(31-16,P2,P3)
DB(31-24),P3	DB(31-16,P2,P3)

NOTE 19 - These rules are necessary to permit interoperation of devices with different DATA BUS widths. For example, if a 16-bit device selects a 32-bit device, the 32-bit device will observe invalid parity on the

upper 16 bits of the data bus.

8.3 Signal states

8.3.1 Signal-ended

Signals may be in a true (asserted) or false (negated) state. Signals that are asserted are actively driven to the true state. Signals that are negated may either be actively driven to the false state or released to the false state. A signal that is released goes to the false state because the bias of the terminator pulls the signal false. OR-tied signals shall not be actively driven false.

NOTE 20 - The advantage of actively negating signals false during information transfer is that the noise margin is higher than if the signal is simply released. This facilitates reliable data transfer at high transfer rates.

Bits of the DATA BUS are defined as one when the signal is true, and defined as zero when the signal is false.

8.3.2 Differential

Figure 41 defines the voltage and current definitions.

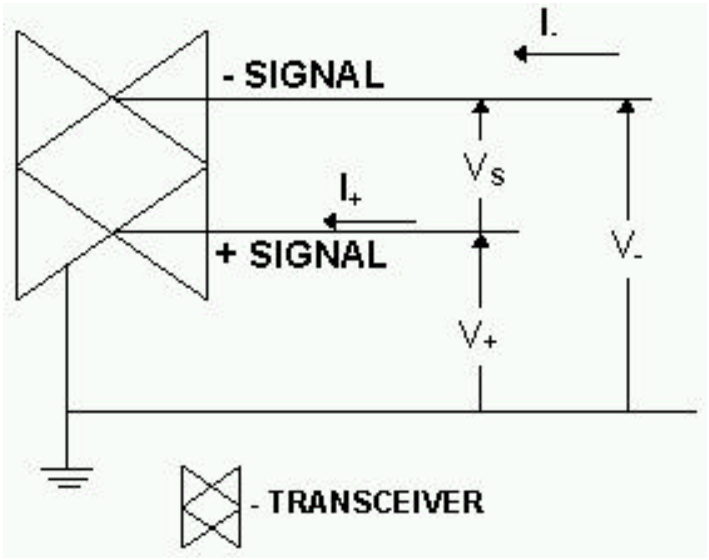


Figure 41 - Voltage and current definitions

Figure 42 defines the signaling sense of the voltages appearing on the - signal and + signal lines as follows:

a) The - signal terminal of the driver shall be negative with respect to the + signal terminal for an asserted state.
b) The - signal terminal of the driver shall be positive with respect to the + signal terminal for a negated state.

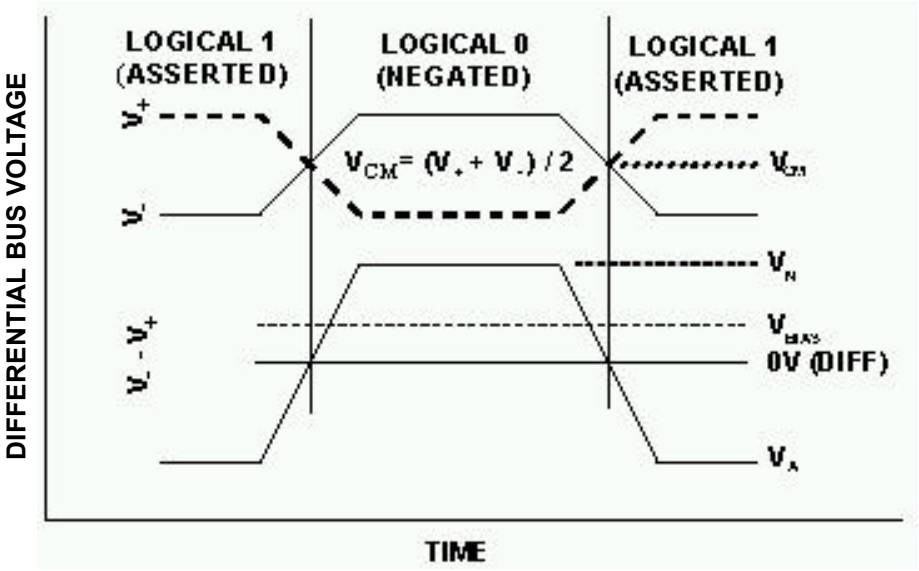


Figure 42 - Signaling sense

NOTE 21 - For a description of V_{BIAS} see 7.1.4.

8.4 OR-tied signals

The BSY, SEL, and RST signals shall be OR-tied. Any signal other than BSY, SEL, and RST may employ OR-tied or non-OR-tied drivers.

BSY and RST signals may be simultaneously driven true by several drivers. No signals other than BSY, SEL, RST, and DB(P,P1,P2,P3) are simultaneously driven by two or more drivers. Parity bits shall not be driven false during the ARBITRATION phase but may be driven false in other phases. There is no operational problem in mixing OR-tied and non-OR-tied drivers on signals other than BSY, SEL, and RST.

8.5 Signal sources

Table 40 indicates the type of SCSI device allowed to source each signal. No attempt is made to show if the source is driving asserted, driving negated, or is released. All SCSI device drivers that are not active sources shall be in the high-impedance state. The RST signal may be asserted by any SCSI device at any time.

Table 40 - Signal sources

SCSI bus phase	P cable signals						Q cable signals		
	A cable signals								
	BSY	SEL	C/D I/O MSG REQ	ACK ATN	DB7-0 DB(P)	DB15-8 DB(P1)	REQQ	ACKQ	DB31-16 DB(P2) DB(P3)
BUS FREE	None	None	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
ARBITRATION	All	Win	None	None	S ID	S ID	None	None	S ID
SELECTION	I&T	Init	None	Init	Init	Init	None	None	Init
RESELECTION	I&T	Targ	Targ	Init	Targ	Targ	None	None	Targ
COMMAND	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Init	None	None	None	None
DATA IN	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Targ	Targ	Targ	Init	Targ
DATA OUT	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Init	Init	Targ	Init	Init
STATUS	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Targ	None	None	None	None
MESSAGE IN	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Targ	None	None	None	None
MESSAGE OUT	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Init	None	None	None	None

All: The signal shall be driven by all SCSI devices that are actively arbitrating.

S ID: A unique data bit (the SCSI ID) shall be driven by each SCSI device that is actively arbitrating; the other data bits shall be released (i.e., not driven) by this SCSI device. The parity bit(s) may be released or driven to the true state, but shall not be driven to the false state during this phase.

I&T: The signal shall be driven by the initiator, target, or both, as specified in the SELECTION phase and RESELECTION phase.

Fort: Initiator or target or neither, depending on the state of the I/O signal and the bus width.

Init: If driven, this signal shall be driven only by the active initiator.

None: The signal shall be released; that is, not driven by any SCSI device. The bias circuitry of the bus terminators pulls the signal to the false state.

Win: The signal shall be driven by the one SCSI device that wins arbitration.

Targ: If the signal is driven, it shall be driven only by the active target.

9 SCSI parallel bus timing

Unless otherwise indicated, the delay-time measurements for each SCSI device, shown in table 41, shall be calculated from signal conditions existing at that SCSI device's port. Thus, these measurements (except cable skew delay) can be made without considering delays in the cable. The timing characteristics of each signal are described in the following paragraphs. The timing specifications in this clause may be applied to SCSI parallel interface.

Table 41 - SCSI bus timing values

Timing description	Timing values				
	Asynch	Fast-5	Fast-10	Fast-20	Fast-40
Arbitration Delay	2,4 µs	2,4 µs	2,4 µs	2,4 µs	2,4 µs
Bus Clear Delay	800 ns	800 ns	800 ns	800 ns	800 ns
Bus Free Delay	800 ns	800 ns	800 ns	800 ns	800 ns
Bus Set Delay	1,6 µs	1,6 µs	1,6 µs	1,6 µs	1,6 µs
Bus Settle Delay	400 ns	400 ns	400 ns	400 ns	400 ns
Cable Skew Delay (note 1)	4 ns	4 ns	4 ns	3 ns	4,5 ns
Data Release Delay	400 ns	400 ns	400 ns	400 ns	400 ns
Disconnection Delay	200 us	200 us	200 us	200 us	200 us
Power on to Selection (note 4)	10 s	10 s	10 s	10 s	10 s
Receive Assertion Period (note 2)	N/A	70 ns	22 ns	11 ns	6,5 ns
Receive Hold Time (note 2 and note 3)	N/A	25 ns	25 ns	11,5 ns	4,75 ns
Receive Negation Period (note 2)	N/A	70 ns	22 ns	11 ns	6,5 ns
Receive Setup Time (note 2 and note 3)	N/A	15 ns	15 ns	6,5 ns	4,75 ns
Receive Period Tolerance	N/A	0,5%	0,5%	0,5%	0,5%
Reset Hold Time	25 µs	25 µs	25 µs	25 µs	25 µs
Reset to Selection (note 4)	250 ms	250 ms	250 ms	250 ms	250 ms
Selection Abort Time	200 µs	200 µs	200 µs	200 µs	200 µs
Selection Time-out Delay (note 4)	250 ms	250 ms	250 ms	250 ms	250 ms
System Deskew Delay	45 ns	45 ns	20 ns	15 ns	8 ns
Transfer Period during Synchronous Data Transfer Phases (note 5)	N/A	200 ns	100 ns	50 ns	25 ns
Transmit Assertion Period (note 2)	N/A	80 ns	30 ns	15 ns	8 ns
Transmit Hold Time (note 2 and note 3)	N/A	53 ns	33 ns	16,5 ns	9,25 ns
Transmit Negation Period (note 2)	N/A	80 ns	30 ns	15 ns	8 ns
Transmit Setup Time (note 2 and note 3)	N/A	23 ns	23 ns	11,5 ns	9,25 ns
Transmit Period Tolerance	N/A	0,25%	0,25%	0,25%	0,25%

Notes:
1) This time does not apply at the SCSI device connectors.
2) See 9.2 for measurement points for the timing specifications.
3) See 9.3 for examples of how to calculate setup and hold timing.
4) This is a recommended time. It is not mandatory.
5) The transfer period is measured from an assertion edge of REQ/REQQ (ACK/ ACKQ) signal to the next assertion edge of the signal.

Editors Note 4 - GOP: Bus Set Delay timing changed. Proposal 97-116r0

9.1 Timing description

9.1.1 Arbitration delay

The minimum time an SCSI device shall wait from asserting the BSY signal for arbitration until the DATA BUS can be examined to see if arbitration has been won. There is no maximum time.

9.1.2 Bus clear delay

The maximum time for an SCSI device to release all SCSI bus signals after:

a) the BUS FREE phase is detected (the BSY and SEL signals are both false for a bus settle delay);
b) the SEL signal is received from another SCSI device during the ARBITRATION phase;
c) the transition of the RST signal to true.

For item a) above, the maximum time for an SCSI device to release all SCSI bus signals is 1 200 ns from the BSY and SEL signals first becoming both false. If an SCSI device requires more than a bus settle delay to detect BUS FREE phase, it shall release all SCSI bus signals within a bus clear delay minus the excess time.

9.1.3 Bus free delay

The minimum time that an SCSI device shall wait from its detection of the BUS FREE phase (BSY and SEL both false for a bus settle delay) until its assertion of the BSY signal in preparation for entering the ARBITRATION phase.

9.1.4 Bus set delay

The maximum time for an SCSI device to assert the BSY signal and its SCSI ID after it detects a BUS FREE phase for the purpose of entering the ARBITRATION phase.Bus settle delay

The minimum time to wait for the bus to settle after changing certain control signals as called out in the protocol definitions.

9.1.5 Cable skew delay

The maximum difference in propagation time allowed between any two SCSI bus signals measured between any two SCSI devices.

9.1.6 Data release delay

The maximum time for an initiator to release the DATA BUS signals following the transition of the I/O signal from false to true.

9.1.7 Disconnection delay

The minimum time that a target shall wait after releasing BSY before participating in an ARBITRATION phase when honoring a DISCONNECT message from the initiator.

9.1.8 Power on to selection

The recommended maximum time from power application until an SCI target is able to respond with

appropriate status and sense data to the TEST UNIT READY, INQUIRY, and REQUEST SENSE commands (See SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard).

9.1.9 Receive assertion period

The minimum time required at a device receiving a REQ or REQQ signal for the signal to be asserted while using synchronous data transfers. Also, the minimum time required at a device receiving an ACK or ACKQ signal for the signal to be asserted while using synchronous data transfers. In SE operation, the time period is measured at the 0,8 V level. The timings for the REQQ and ACKQ signals only apply to wide data transfers.

9.1.10 Receive hold time

The minimum time required at the receiving device between the assertion of the REQ or REQQ signal or the ACK or ACKQ signals and the changing of the DATA BUS while using synchronous data transfers. The timings for the REQQ and ACKQ signals only apply to 32-bit-wide data transfers.

9.1.11 Receive negation period

The minimum time required at a device receiving a REQ or REQQ signal for the signal to be negated while using synchronous data transfers. Also, the minimum time required at a device receiving an ACK or ACKQ signal for the signal to be asserted while using synchronous data transfers. In SE operation, the time period is measured at the 2,0 V level. The timings for the REQQ and ACKQ signals only apply to wide data transfers.

9.1.12 Receive setup time

The minimum time required at the receiving device between the changing of DATA BUS and the assertion of the REQ or REQQ signal or the ACK or ACKQ signal while using synchronous data transfers. The timings for the REQQ and ACKQ signals only apply to 32-bit-wide data transfers.

9.1.13 Receive period tolerance

The minimum tolerance that an SCSI device shall allow to be subtracted from the negotiated synchronous period.

9.1.14 Reset hold time

The minimum time that the RST signal is asserted. There is no maximum time.

9.1.15 Reset to Selection

The recommended maximum time from after a reset condition until an SCI target is able to respond with appropriate status and sense data to the TEST UNIT READY, INQUIRY, and REQUEST SENSE commands (See SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard).

9.1.16 Selection abort time

The maximum time that an SCSI device shall take from its most recent detection of being selected or reselected until asserting a the BSY signal in response. This time-out is required to ensure that a target or initiator does not assert the BSY signal after a SELECTION or RESELECTION phase has been aborted.

9.1.17 Selection time-out delay

The minimum time that an initiator or target should wait for a the assertion of the BSY signal in response during the SELECTION or RESELECTION phase before starting the time-out procedure. Note that this is only a recommended time period.

9.1.18 System deskew delay

The minimum time that a device should wait after receiving an SCSI signal to ensure that any signals transmitted at the same time are valid.

9.1.19 Transmit assertion period

The minimum time that a target shall assert the REQ or REQQ signal while using synchronous data transfers. Also, the minimum time that an initiator shall assert the ACK or ACKQ signal while using synchronous data transfers. The timing for the REQQ and ACKQ signals only apply to 32-bit-wide data transfers.

9.1.20 Transmit hold time

The minimum time provided by the transmitting device between the assertion of the REQ or REQQ signal or the ACK or ACKQ signal and the changing of the DATA BUS while using synchronous data transfers. The timings for the REQQ and ACKQ signals only apply to 32-bit wide data transfers.

9.1.21 Transmit negation period

The minimum time that a target shall negate the REQ or REQQ signal while using synchronous data transfers. Also, the minimum time that an initiator shall negate the ACK or ACKQ signal while using synchronous data transfers. The timing for the REQQ and ACKQ signals only apply to 32-bit -wide data transfers.

9.1.22 Transmit setup time

The minimum time provided by the transmitting device between the changing of DATA BUS and the assertion of the REQ or REQQ signal or the ACK or ACKQ signal while using synchronous data transfers. The timings for the REQQ and ACKQ signals only apply to 32-bit -wide data transfers.

9.1.23 Transmit period tolerance

The maximum tolerance that an SCSI device may subtract from the negotiated synchronous period.

9.2 Measurement points

The measurements points for SE and differential ACK, REQ, DATA, and PARITY signals are defined in this clause.

9.2.1 SE up to fast-10 data transfer rates

SE devices with data transfer rates up to and including fast-10 shall use the measurement points defined in figure 43 for the measurement of the timing values. The rise and fall times for the SE REQ/ACK signals shall be nominally the same as for the SE DATA/PARITY signals

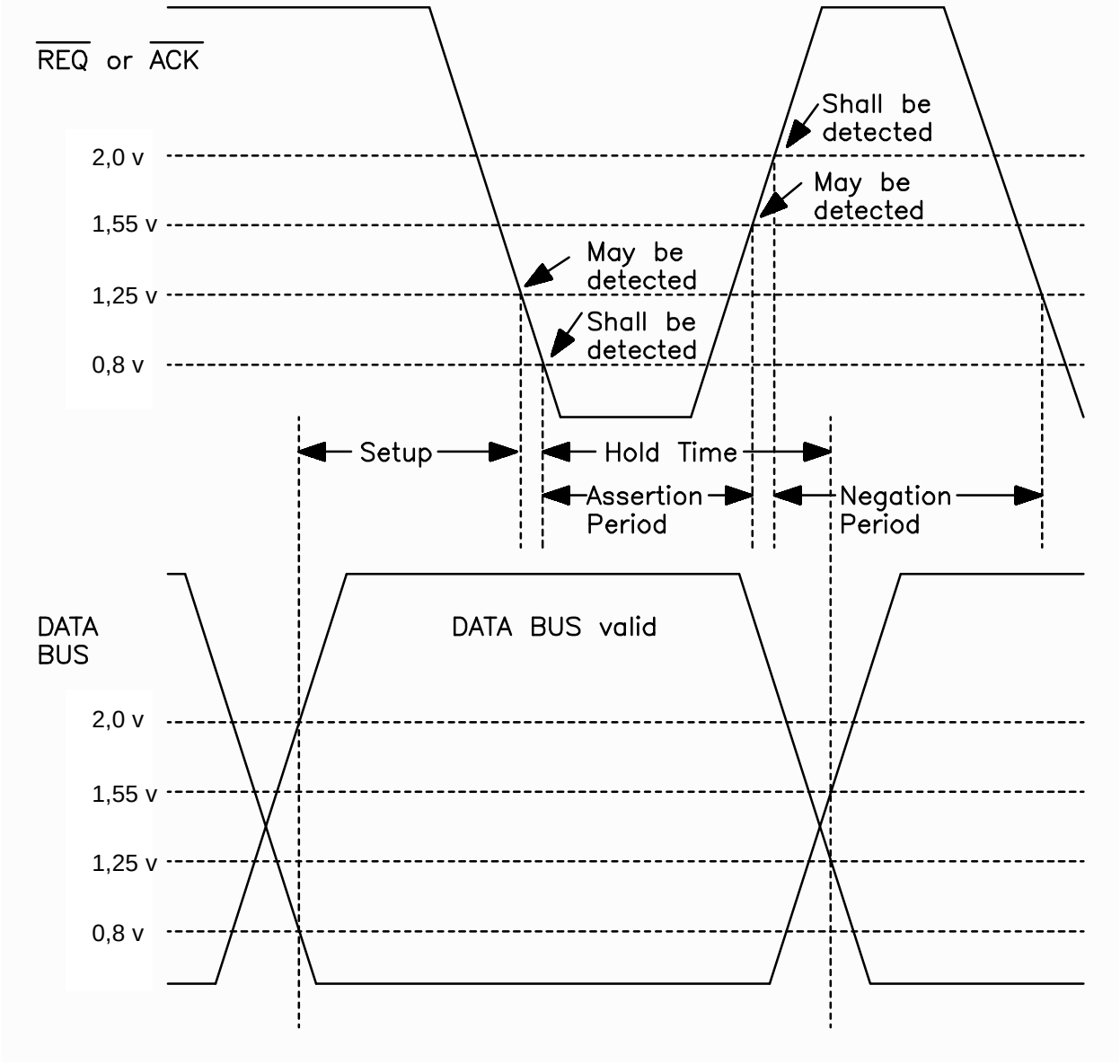


Figure 43 - Fast-10 SE timing measurement points

Editors Note 5 - GOP: The voltages above were given to me at the working group. Are they correct?

9.2.2 SE up to fast-20 data transfer rates

SE devices with data transfer rates up to and including fast-20 shall use the measurement points defined in figure 44 for the measurement of the timing values. The rise and fall times for the SE REQ/ACK signals shall be nominally the same as for the SE DATA/PARITY signals

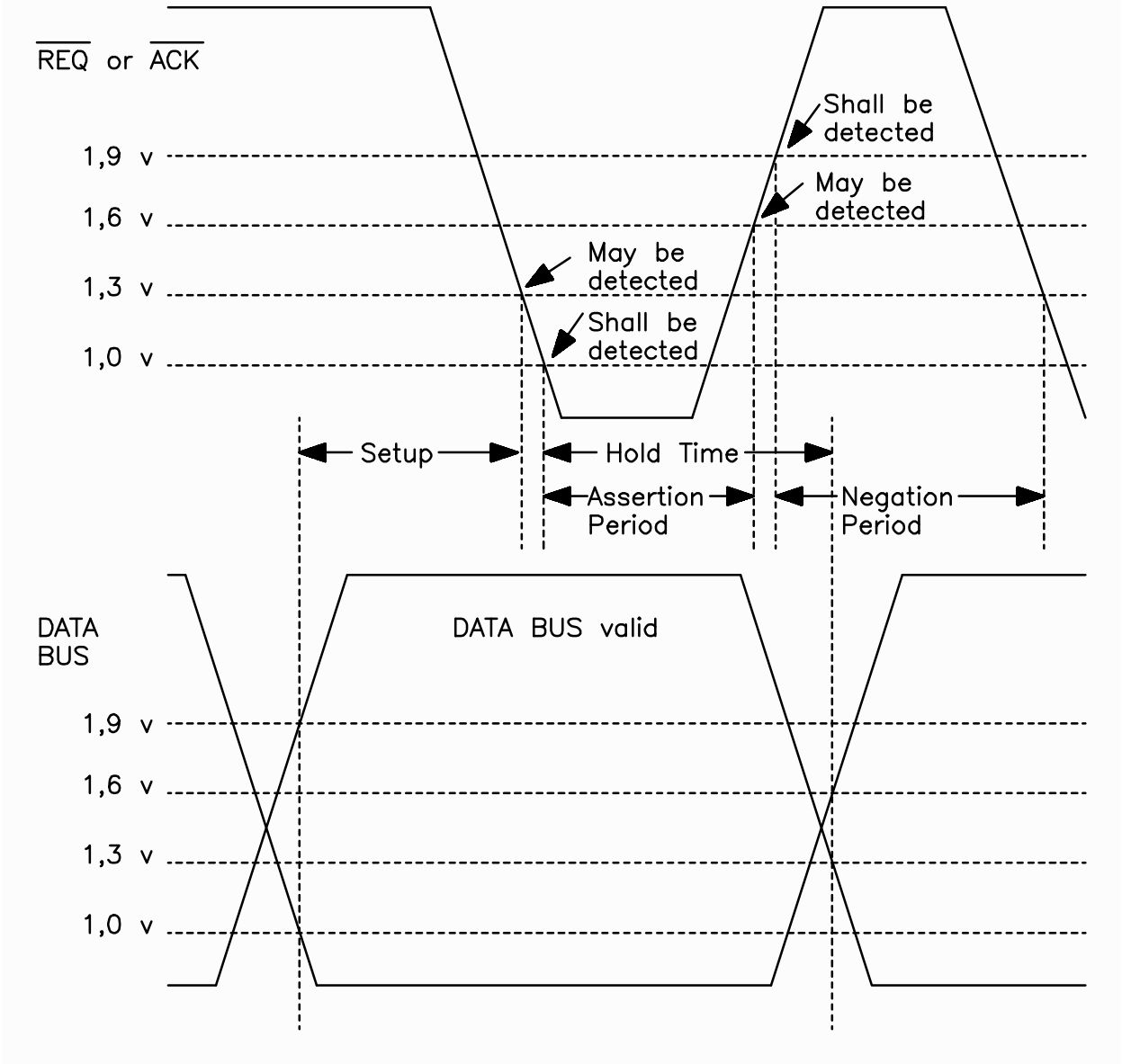


Figure 44 - Fast-20 SE timing measurement points

9.2.3 Differential

Differential devices shall use the measurement points defined in figure 45 for the measurement of the timing values. The rise and fall times for the differential REQ/ACK signals shall be nominally the same as for the differential DATA/PARITY signals

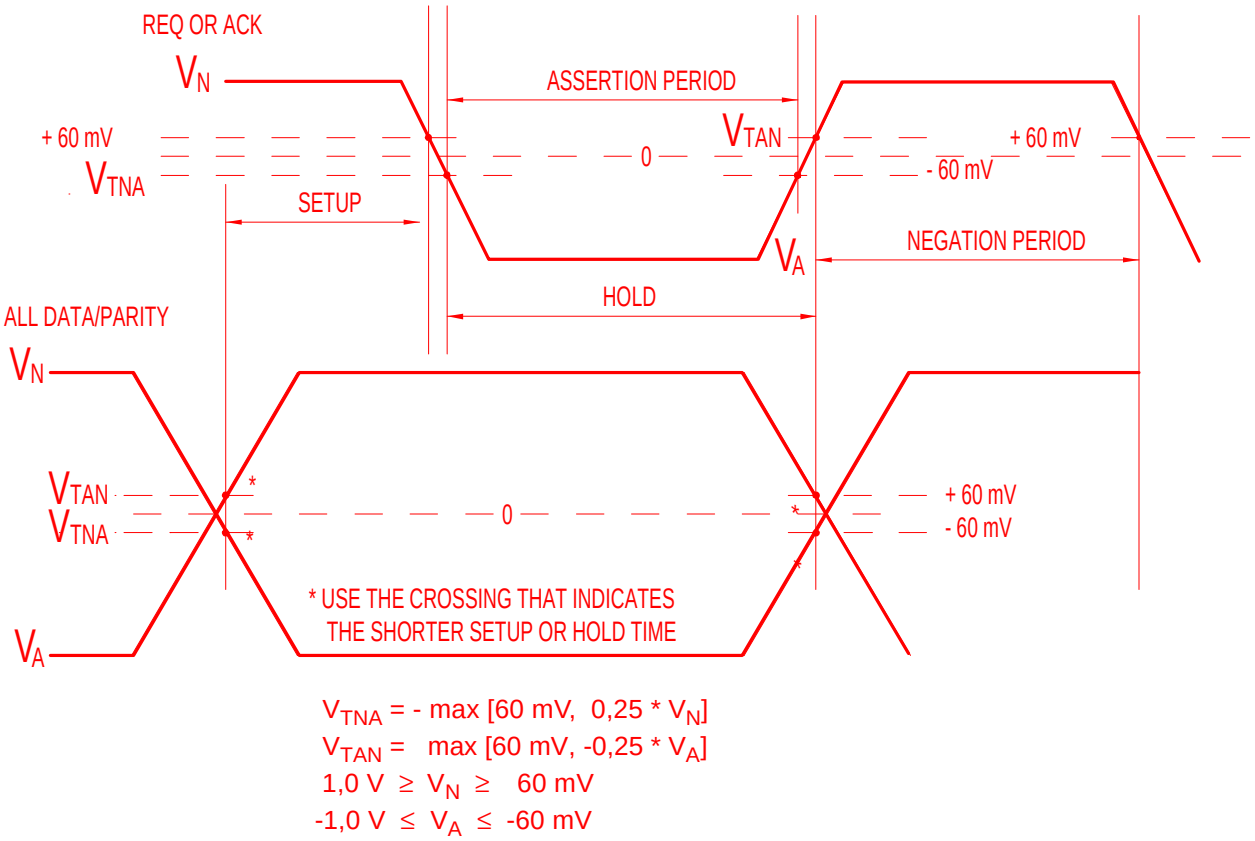


Figure 45 - Differential timing measurement points

Editors Note 6 - GOP: According to working group the above figure does not have all the information on it that the working group agreed to. Need a new drawing.

Figure 45 recognizes that receivers may require a larger differential signal to overcome a strongly asserted or negated state than required for a weakly asserted or negated state. With the maximum assertion level of V_A it requires a signal that crosses the zero differential level by at least 0.25 times V_A (but at least by 60 mV in all cases) to guarantee detection of a negation for fast signals. The same relationship applies for the maximum negated level V_N. Conditions exist with longer loaded busses and irregular REQ and ACK pulse widths where long assertions or negations produce a much larger signal than short assertions or negations. This sets up an environment where the short REQ or ACK pulses may not have adequate timing margin unless the definitions in figure 45 are used in the measurement of timing parameters.

Measurement of driver timing parameters shall be performed using the circuit and test conditions defined in A.2.5 applied to the device connector. Receiver timing parameters are defined by the waveforms existing at the connector of the receiving device. The receiver timing parameters include the effects of data pattern -- the receiver data pattern is therefore not defined.

9.3 Setup and hold timings

9.3.1 Up to and including fast-10 data transfers

Figure 46 and figure 47 show how the setup and hold times are calculated for various physical configurations on SCSI devices that support up to fast-10 data transfers. SCSI timing is specified at the SCSI connectors. To calculate the setup and hold timings for SCSI protocol chips, the following examples are provided

.

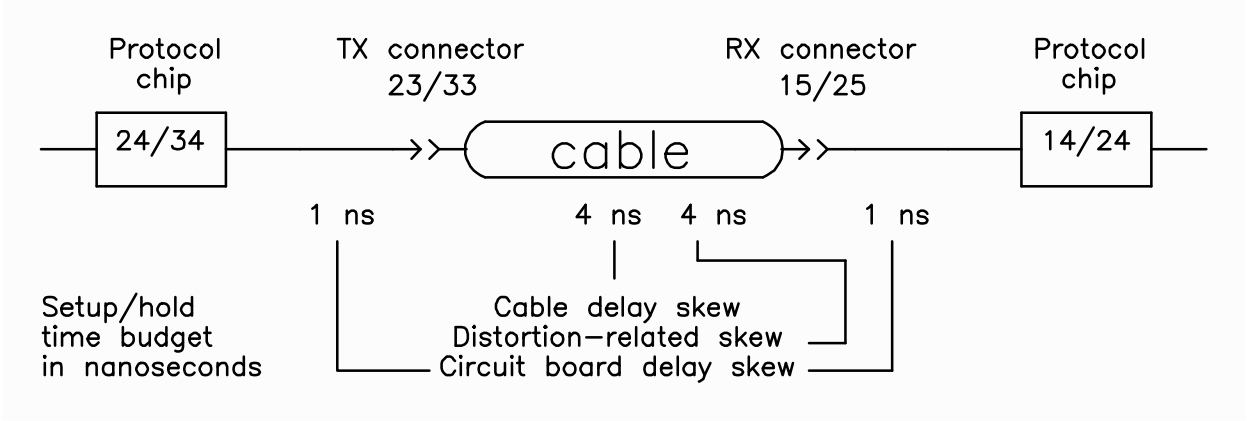


Figure 46 - Fast-10 setup and hold times for SE applications

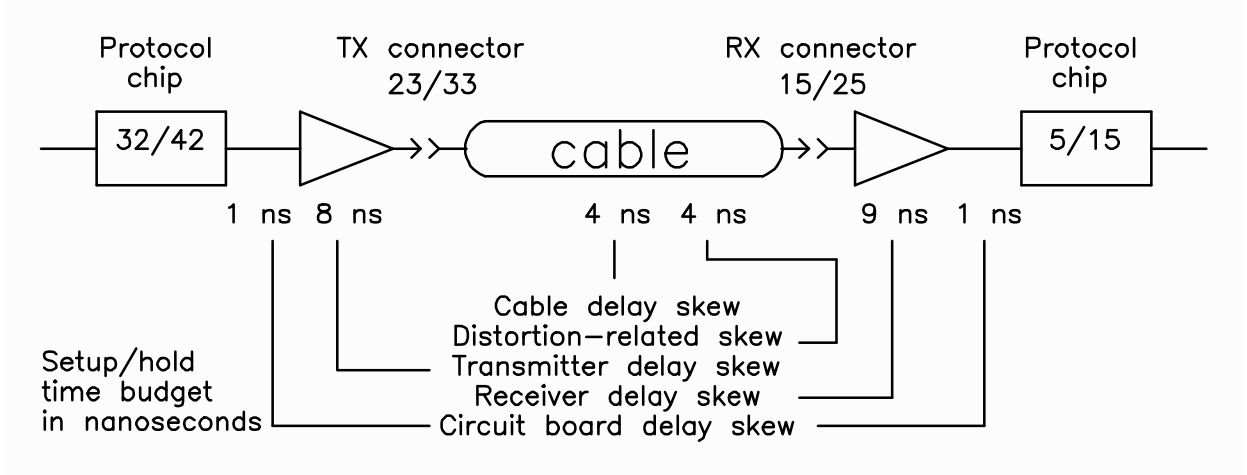
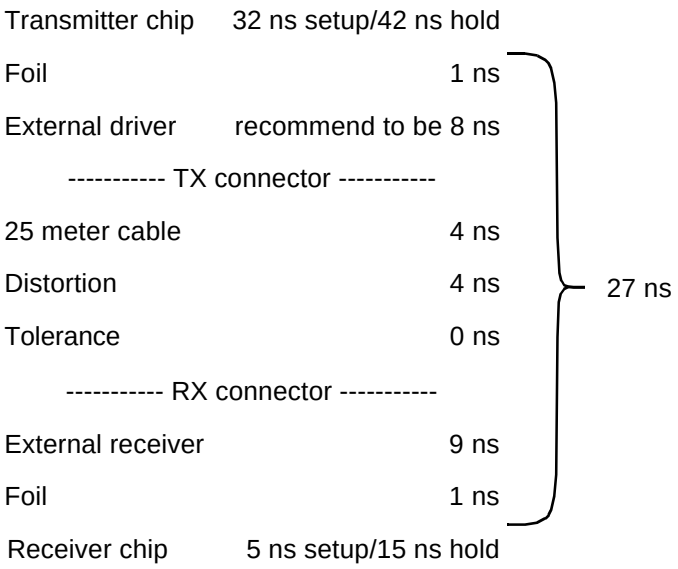


Figure 47 - Fast-10 setup and hold timing for differential applications

The receiver delay skew is the maximum difference in propagation delay time between any two receivers on the REQ, REQQ, ACK, ACKQ, DATA BUS or parity signals of the same bus when external receivers are used.

The transmitter delay skew is the maximum difference in propagation delay time between any two transmitters on the REQ, REQQ, ACK, ACKQ, DATA BUS or parity signals of the same bus when external transmitters are used.

In systems with external transceivers, the total skew budget is 27 ns



At its connector, the transmitting SCSI device should

a) drive data no less than 23 ns before asserting the REQx or ACKx signal;
b) keep that data valid for no less than 33 ns following the assertion of the REQx or ACKx signal.

The receiving device shall be able to latch the data at its connector when

a) data is valid no more than 15 ns prior to the false-to-true transition of the REQx or ACKx signal;
b) data is valid no more than 25 ns following the false-to-true transition of REQx or ACKx signal.

When 9 ns is added to the transmit device timing for transmitter skew and skew due to foil delays, the transmitting SCSI chip setup and hold timings are 32 ns and 42 ns, respectively. Similarly, when 10 ns is subtracted from the skew budget of the receiving device, 5 ns and 15 ns are left for receive chip setup and hold, respectively.

In the case of fast timing with no external transceivers over a 25 m cable, the total skew budget is 10 ns, compared to 27 ns. The 17 ns difference is used to relax the timing at the SCSI protocol chips (8 ns for the transmitting chip, and 9 ns for the receiving chip).

NOTE 22 - Component vendors may require that differential drivers and receivers be operated within restricted voltage and temperature differences to achieve the specified transmitter and receiver delay skew values.

9.3.2 Up to and including fast-20 data transfers

Figure 48 and figure 49 show how the setup and hold times are calculated for various physical configurations on SCSI devices that support up to fast-20 data transfers. SCSI timing is specified at the SCSI connectors. To calculate the setup and hold timings for SCSI protocol chips, the following examples are provided

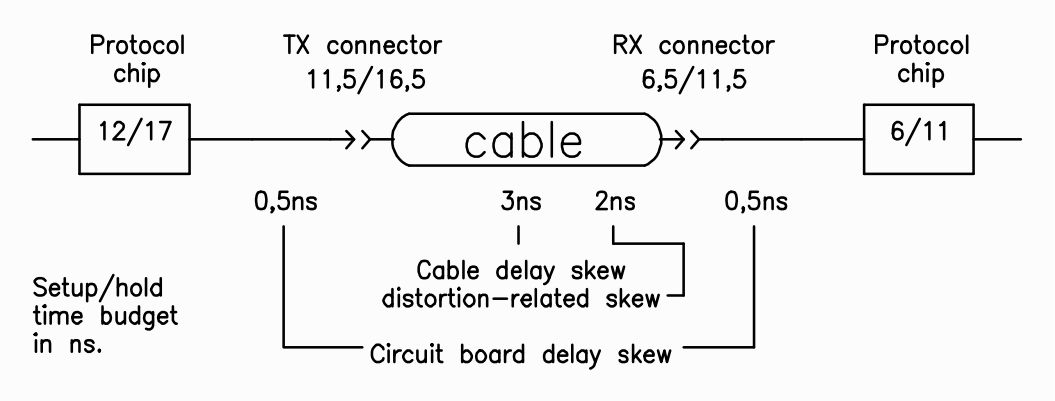


Figure 48 - Fast-20 setup and hold times for SE applications

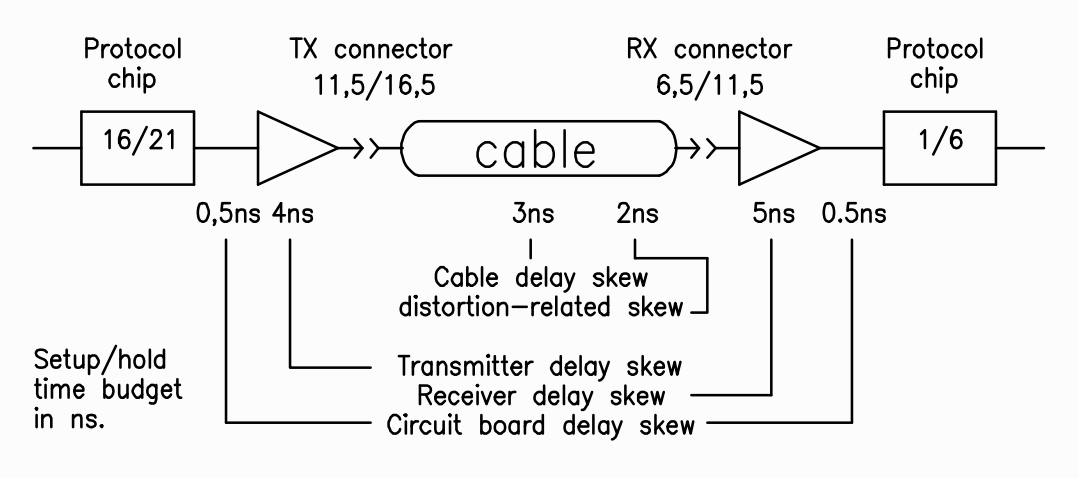
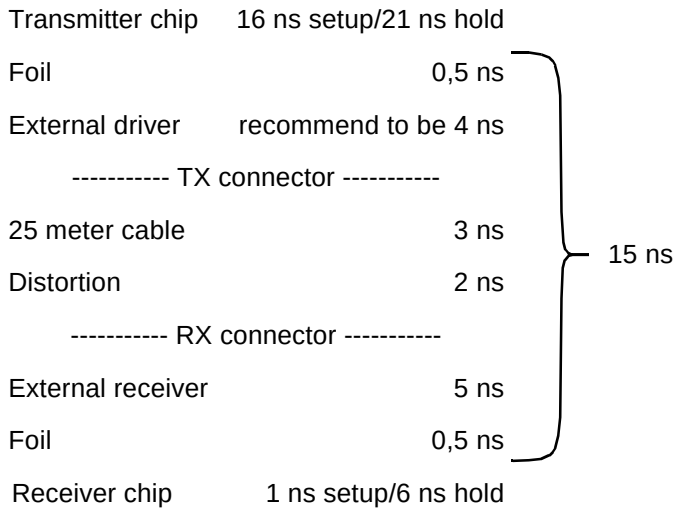


Figure 49 - Fast-20 setup and hold timing for differential applications

The receiver delay skew is the maximum difference in propagation delay time between any two receivers on the REQ, REQQ, ACK, ACKQ, DATA BUS, or parity signals of the same bus when external receivers are used.

The transmitter delay skew is the maximum difference in propagation delay time between any two transmitters on the REQ, REQQ, ACK, ACKQ, DATA BUS, or parity signals of the same bus when external transmitters are used.

The cable delay skew includes skew caused by non-uniform bus loading in mixed width applications, path length differences between different signals, and other factors affecting propagation time differences between the connectors, and between different signals.



At its connector, the transmitting SCSI device should:

a) drive data no less than 11,5 ns before asserting the REQx or ACKx signal;
b) keep that data valid for no less than 16,5 ns following the assertion of the REQx or ACKx signal.

The receiving device shall be able to latch the data at its connector when:

a) data is valid no more than 6,5 ns prior to the false-to-true transition of the REQx or ACKx signal;
b) data is valid no more than 11,5 ns following the false-to-true transition of REQx or ACKx signal.

When 4,5 ns is added to the transmit device timing for transmitter skew and skew due to foil delays, the transmitting SCSI chip setup and hold timings are 16 ns and 21 ns, respectively. Similarly, when 5,5 ns is subtracted from the skew budget of the receiving device, 1 ns and 6 ns are left for the receiving SCSI chip setup and hold, respectively.

In the case of fast-20 timing with no external transceivers over a 3 m signal path, the total skew budget is 6 ns, compared to 15 ns. The 9 ns difference is used to relax the timing at the SCSI protocol chips (4 ns for the transmitting chip, and 5 ns for the receiving chip).

NOTE 23 - Component vendors may require that differential drivers and receivers be operated within restricted voltage and temperature differences to achieve the specified transmitter and receiver delay skew values.

9.3.3 Up to and including fast-40 data transfers

The minimum set up and hold timings specified in figure 50 shall be used. Note that these values are different for the driver and the receiver but that the receiver sensitivity provides the threshold points for both. This is required because both extreme cases must be covered:

a) receivers connected to drivers with very short interconnect, and
b) receivers connected to drivers through worst case interconnect.

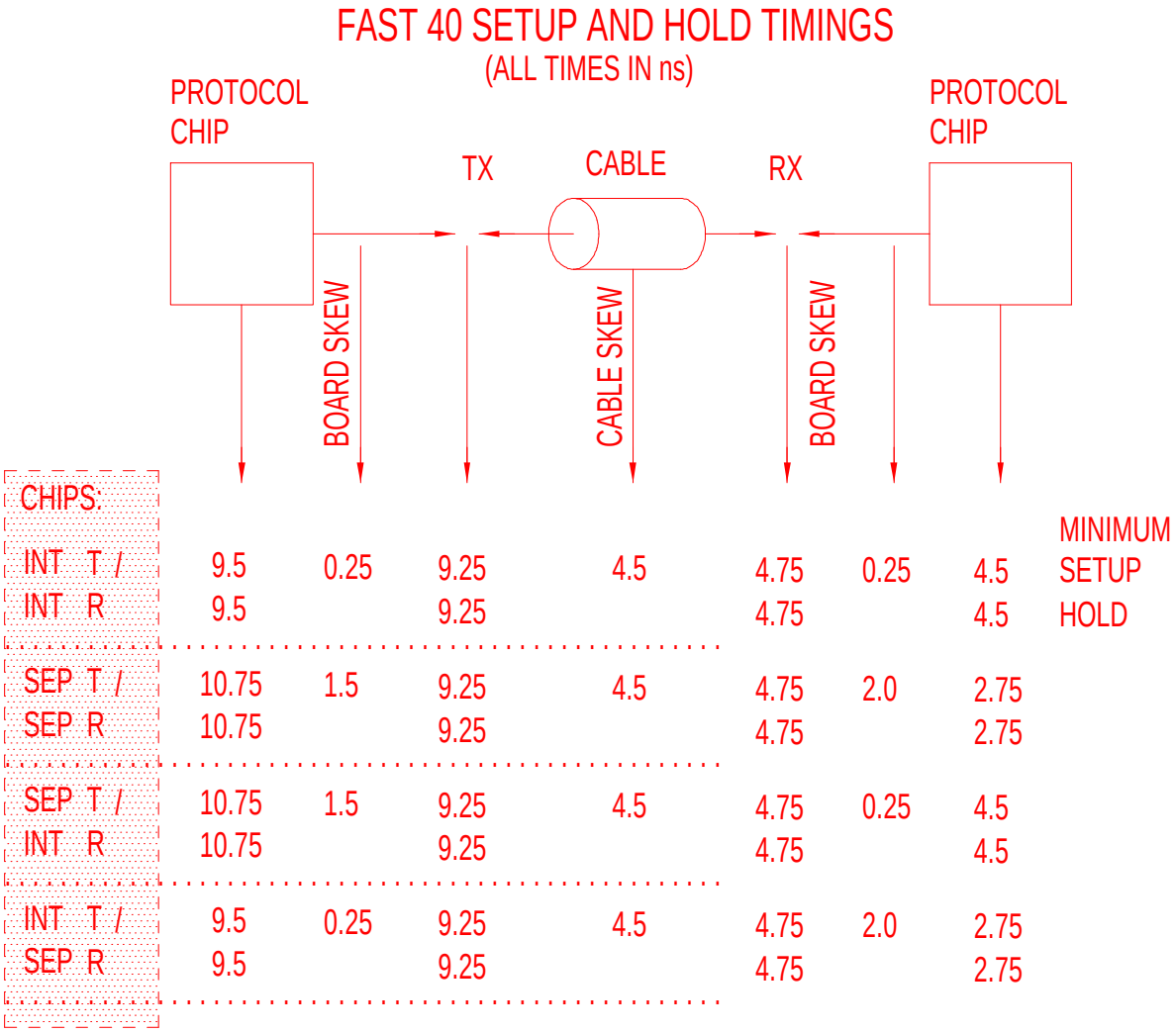


Figure 50 - Fast-40 System setup and hold timings (all times in ns)

10 Removal and insertion of SCSI devices

This clause defines the physical requirements for removal and insertion of SCSI devices on the SCSI bus. The issues related to the logical configuration of the SCSI bus and characteristics of the SCSI devices when a replacement occurs are beyond the scope of this standard.

Four cases are addressed. The cases are differentiated by the state of the SCSI bus when the removal or insertion occurs.

10.1 Case 1 - Power-off during removal or insertion

a) All devices are power-off during physical reconfiguration.

10.2 Case 2 - RST signal asserted continuously during removal or insertion

a) The system shall be designed so that the SCSI device being inserted shall make its power ground and logic ground connections at least 1 ms prior to the connection of any device connector contact to the bus. The ground connections shall be maintained during and after the connection of the device to the bus;
b) The system shall be designed so that the SCSI device being removed shall maintain its power ground and logic ground prior to, during, and for at least 1 ms after the disconnection of any device connector contact from the bus.

NOTE 24 - -The translation of the 1 ms time to mechanical provisions is vendor specific.

10.3 Case 3 - Current I/O processes not allowed during insertion or removal

a) All I/O processes for all SCSI devices shall be quiesced;
b) The system shall be designed so that the SCSI device being inserted shall make its power ground and logic ground connections at least 1 ms prior to the connection of any device connector contact to the bus. The ground connections shall be maintained during and after the connection of the SCSI device to the bus;
c) The system shall be designed so that the SCSI device being removed shall maintain its power ground and logic ground prior to, during, and for at least 1 ms after the disconnection of any device connector contact from the bus;
d) The SCSI device being removed or inserted shall employ transceivers that conform to the requirements for glitch-free power on/off in 7.1.2, 7.2.2, 7.3.2, and 7.4.2. The SCSI device shall maintain the high-impedance state at the device connector contacts during a power cycle until the transceiver is enabled. Power cycling includes on-board TERMPWR cycling, caused by plugging, and device power cycling caused by plugging and switching. Note that any on board switchable terminators as well as device transceivers may affect the impedance state at the device connector contacts;
e) The power to the electronics and mechanics of the device may be simultaneously switched with the bus contacts if the power distribution system is able to maintain adequate power stability to other devices during the transition and the grounding requirements in items (b) and (c) above are met;
f) The SCSI bus termination shall be external to the device being inserted or removed.

10.4 Case 4 - Current I/O process allowed during insertion or removal

a) All I/O processes for the SCSI device being inserted or removed shall be quiesced. All other SCSI devices on the bus shall have receivers that conform to the provisions in 7.1 and 7.4;
b) A device being inserted shall make its power ground and logic ground connection at least 1 ms prior to the connection of any device connector contact to the bus. The ground connections shall be maintained during and after the connection of the device to the bus;

c) A device being removed shall maintain its power ground and logic ground prior to, during, and for at least 1 ms after the disconnection of any device connector contact from the bus;
d) The SCSI device being removed or inserted shall employ transceivers that conform to the requirements for glitch-free power on/off in 7.1.2 and 7.4.2. The SCSI device shall maintain the high-impedance state at the device connector contacts during a power cycle until the transceiver is enabled;
e) The SCSI device being removed or inserted shall employ transceivers that conform to the requirements for glitch-free power on/off in 7.1.2 and 7.4.2. The SCSI device shall maintain the high-impedance state at the device connector contacts during a power cycle until the transceiver is enabled. Power cycling includes on board TERMPWR cycling, caused by plugging, and device power cycling caused by plugging and switching.

NOTE 25 - Any on-board switchable terminators as well as device transceivers may affect the impedance state at the device connector contacts;

f) The power to the electronics and mechanics of the device may be simultaneously switched with the bus contacts if the power distribution system is able to maintain adequate power stability to other devices during the transition and the grounding requirements in items (b) and (c) above are met;
g) The SCSI bus termination shall be external to the device being inserted or removed;
h) Bypassing capacitors connecting to the TERMPWR line on the device being inserted or removed shall not exceed 10 µF. For single- ended applications, bus termination shall use voltage regulation on both ends.

10.5 Driver support for removal and insertion of SCSI devices

Table 42 lists the removal /insertion modes supported by the different types of drivers.

Table 42 - Removal/insertion mode support

Driver	Removal/insertion modes			
	mode 1	mode 2	mode 3	mode 4
SE	yes	yes	yes	yes
LVD	yes	yes	yes	no
SE/LVD multimode	yes	yes	yes	no
HVD (note)	yes	yes	yes	yes
Note: HVD environments with high common mode voltages may expose LVD and SE devices to voltages that may cause damage to the SE and LVD devices.				

11 Logical characteristics

11.1 SCSI bus phases

The SCSI architecture includes eight distinct phases:

a) BUS FREE phase,
b) ARBITRATION phase,
c) SELECTION phase,
d) RESELECTION phase,
e) COMMAND phase,
f) DATA phase,
g) STATUS phase, and
h) MESSAGE phase.

The COMMAND phase, DATA phase, STATUS phase, and MESSAGE phase are collectively termed the information transfer phases.

The SCSI bus can never be in more than one phase at any given time. In the following descriptions, signals that are not mentioned shall not be asserted.

11.1.1 BUS FREE phase

The BUS FREE phase indicates that there is no current task and that the SCSI bus is available for a connection.

SCSI devices shall detect the BUS FREE phase after the SEL and BSY signals are both false for at least a bus settle delay.

SCSI devices shall release all SCSI bus signals within a bus clear delay after the BSY and SEL signals become continuously false for a bus settle delay. If an SCSI device requires more than a bus settle delay to detect the BUS FREE phase then it shall release all SCSI bus signals within a bus clear delay minus the excess time to detect the BUS FREE phase. The total time to clear the SCSI bus shall not exceed a bus settle delay plus a bus clear delay.

During normal operation the BUS FREE phase is entered when a target releases the BSY signal.

11.1.1.1 Unexpected bus free

An unexpected bus free occurs when an initiator detects a BUS FREE phase (i.e., the release of BSY) that is not expected. Initiators only expect a BUS FREE phase to occur after one of the following occurs:

a) after a hard reset is detected;
b) after an ABORT TASK message is successfully received by a target;
c) after an ABORT TASK SET message is successfully received by a target;
d) after an CLEAR TASK SET message is successfully received by a target;
e) after an LOGICAL UNIT RESET message is successfully received by a target;
f) after an TARGET RESET message is successfully received by a target;
g) after an TERMINATE TASK message is successfully received by a target;
h) after a DISCONNECT message is successfully transmitted from a target;
i) after a TASK COMPLETE message is successfully transmitted from a target;
j) after a RELEASE RECOVERY message is successfully received by a target;
k) after the release of the SEL signal after a SELECTION or RESELECTION phase time-out.

The target uses an unexpected bus free to inform the initiator of a protocol error. The target may switch to a BUS FREE phase at any time, independent of the state of the ATN signal.

The target shall terminate the task that was the current task before the BUS FREE phase by clearing all data and status for that task. The target may optionally prepare sense data that may be retrieved by a REQUEST SENSE command. However, an unexpected bus free does not create an exception condition.

The initiator shall terminate the task that was the current task before the BUS FREE phase occurred and shall manage this condition as an unsuccessful task termination.

11.1.2 ARBITRATION phase

The ARBITRATION phase allows one SCSI device to gain control of the SCSI bus so that it can initiate or resume a task.

The procedure for an SCSI device to obtain control of the SCSI bus is as follows:

a) The SCSI device shall first wait for the BUS FREE phase to occur. The BUS FREE phase is detected whenever both the BSY and SEL signals are simultaneously and continuously false for a minimum of a bus settle delay.

NOTE 26 - This bus settle delay is necessary because a transmission line phenomenon known as a wired-OR glitch may cause the BSY signal to briefly appear false, even though it is being driven true.

b) The SCSI device shall wait a minimum of a bus free delay after detection of the BUS FREE phase (i.e. after the BSY and SEL signals are both false for a bus settle delay) before driving any signal.
c) Following the bus free delay in step (b), the SCSI device may arbitrate for the SCSI bus by asserting both the BSY signal and its own SCSI ID, however the SCSI device shall not arbitrate (i.e. assert the BSY signal and its SCSI ID) if more than a bus set delay has passed since the BUS FREE phase was last observed.

NOTE 27 - There is no maximum delay before asserting the BSY signal and the SCSI ID following the bus free delay in step (b) as long as the bus remains in the BUS FREE phase. However, SCSI devices that delay longer than a bus settle delay plus a bus set delay from the time when the BSY and SEL signals first become false may fail to participate in arbitration when competing with faster SCSI devices.

d) After waiting at least an arbitration delay (measured from its assertion of the BSY signal) the SCSI device shall examine the DATA BUS. If a higher priority SCSI ID bit is true on the DATA BUS (see table 38 for the SCSI ID arbitration priorities), then the SCSI device has lost the arbitration and the SCSI device may release its signals and return to step (a). If no higher priority SCSI ID bit is true on the DATA BUS, then the SCSI device has won the arbitration and it shall assert the SEL signal. Any SCSI device other than the winner has lost the arbitration and shall release the BSY signal and its SCSI ID bit within a bus clear delay after the SEL signal becomes true. An SCSI device that loses arbitration may return to step (a).

NOTE 28 - Step d) above requires that any device complete the arbitration phase to the point of SEL being asserted if it begins the arbitration phase as stated in step c). This precludes the possibility of the bus being hung.

NOTE 29 - It is recommended that new implementations wait for the SEL signal to become true before releasing the BSY signal and SCSI ID bit when arbitration is lost.

e) The SCSI device that wins arbitration shall wait at least a bus clear delay plus a bus settle delay after asserting the SEL signal before changing any signals.

NOTE 30 - The SCSI ID bit is a single bit on the DATA BUS that corresponds to the SCSI device's unique SCSI address. All other DATA BUS bits shall be released by the SCSI device. Parity is not valid during the ARBITRATION phase. During the ARBITRATION phase, DB(P), DB(P1) (if present), and DB(P2) (if present) may be released or asserted, but shall not be actively driven false.

11.1.3 SELECTION phase

The SELECTION phase allows an initiator to select a target for the purpose of initiating some target function (e.g., READ or WRITE command). During the SELECTION phase the I/O signal is negated so that this phase can be distinguished from the RESELECTION phase.

The SCSI device that won the arbitration has both the BSY and SEL signals asserted and has delayed at least a bus clear delay plus a bus settle delay before ending the ARBITRATION phase. The SCSI device that won the arbitration becomes an initiator by not asserting the I/O signal.

The initiator shall set the DATA BUS to a value that is the OR of its SCSI ID bit and the target's SCSI ID bit and it shall assert the ATN signal (indicating that a MESSAGE OUT phase is to follow the SELECTION phase). The initiator shall then wait at least two deskew delays and release the BSY signal. The initiator shall then wait at least a bus settle delay before looking for a response from the target.

The target shall determine that it is selected when the SEL signal and its SCSI ID bit are true and the BSY and I/O signals are false for at least a bus settle delay. The selected target may examine the DATA BUS in order to determine the SCSI ID of the selecting initiator. The selected target shall then assert the BSY signal within a selection abort time of its most recent detection of being selected; this is required for correct operation of the selection time-out procedure.

The target shall not respond to a selection if bad parity is detected. Also, if more than two SCSI ID bits are on the DATA BUS, the target shall not respond to selection.

No less than two deskew delays after the initiator detects the BSY signal is true, it shall release the SEL signal and may change the DATA BUS. The target shall wait until the SEL signal is false before asserting the REQ signal to enter an information transfer phase.

11.1.3.1 SELECTION time-out procedure

Two optional selection time-out procedures are specified for clearing the SCSI bus if the initiator waits a minimum of a selection time-out delay and there has been no BSY signal response from the target:

a) Optionally, the initiator shall assert the RST signal (see 11.2.2);
b) Optionally, the initiator shall continue asserting the SEL and ATN signals and shall release the DATA BUS. If the initiator has not detected the BSY signal to be true after at least a selection abort time plus two deskew delays, the initiator shall release the SEL and ATN signals allowing the SCSI bus to go to the BUS FREE phase. SCSI devices shall ensure that when responding to selection that the selection was still valid within a selection abort time of their assertion of the BSY signal. Failure to comply with this requirement could result in an improper selection (two targets connected to the same initiator, wrong target connected to an initiator, or a target connected to no initiator).

11.1.4 RESELECTION phase

RESELECTION is a phase that allows a target to reconnect to an initiator for the purpose of continuing some operation that was previously started by the initiator but was suspended by the target, (i.e. the target disconnected by allowing a BUS FREE phase to occur before the operation was complete).

11.1.4.1 RESELECTION

Upon completing the ARBITRATION phase, the winning SCSI device has both the BSY and SEL signals asserted and has delayed at least a bus clear delay plus a bus settle delay. The winning SCSI device becomes a target by asserting the I/O signal. The winning SCSI device shall also set the DATA BUS to a value that is the logical OR of its SCSI ID bit and the initiator's SCSI ID bit. The target shall wait at least two deskew delays and release the BSY signal. The target shall then wait at least a bus settle delay before looking for a response from the initiator.

The initiator shall determine that it is reselected when the SEL and I/O signals and its SCSI ID bit are true and the BSY signal is false for at least a bus settle delay. The reselected initiator may examine the DATA BUS in order to determine the SCSI ID of the reselecting target. The reselected initiator shall then assert the BSY signal within a selection abort time of its most recent detection of being reselected; this is required for correct operation of the time-out procedure. The initiator shall not respond to a RESELECTION phase if bad parity is detected. Also, the initiator shall not respond to a RESELECTION phase if other than two SCSI ID bits are on the DATA BUS.

After the target detects the BSY signal is true, it shall also assert the BSY signal and wait at least two deskew delays and then release the SEL signal. The target may then change the I/O signal and the DATA BUS. After the reselected initiator detects the SEL signal is false, it shall release the BSY signal. The target shall continue asserting the BSY signal until it relinquishes the SCSI bus.

NOTE 31 - When the target is asserting the BSY signal, a transmission line phenomenon known as a wired-OR glitch may cause the BSY signal to appear false for up to a round-trip propagation delay following the release of the BSY signal by the initiator. This is the reason why the BUS FREE phase is recognized only after both the BSY and SEL signals are continuously false for a minimum of a bus settle delay. For more information on glitches see 7.1.3 and 7.2.2.1.

11.1.4.2 RESELECTION time-out procedure

Two optional RESELECTION time-out procedures are specified for clearing the SCSI bus during a RESELECTION phase if the target waits a minimum of a selection time-out delay and there has been no BSY signal response from the initiator:

a) Optionally, the target shall assert the RST signal (see 11.2.2);
b) Optionally, the target shall continue asserting the SEL and I/O signals and shall release all DATA BUS signals. If the target has not detected the BSY signal to be true after at least a selection abort time plus two deskew delays, the target shall release the SEL and I/O signals allowing the SCSI bus to go to the BUS FREE phase. SCSI devices shall ensure that the reselection was still valid within a selection abort time of their assertion of the BSY signal. Failure to comply with this requirement could result in an improper reselection (two initiators connected to the same target or the wrong initiator connected to a target).

11.1.5 Information transfer phases

The COMMAND, DATA, STATUS, and MESSAGE phases are all grouped together as the information transfer phases because they are all used to transfer data or control information via the DATA BUS. The actual content of the information is beyond the scope of this section.

The C/D, I/O, and MSG signals are used to distinguish between the different information transfer phases (see table 43). The target drives these three signals and therefore controls all changes from one phase to another. The initiator can request a MESSAGE OUT phase by asserting the ATN signal, while the target can cause the BUS FREE phase by releasing the MSG, C/D, I/O, and BSY signals.

When the data bus width is greater then 16, the REQQ and ACKQ signals are used to transfer the upper bytes of the word over the secondary SCSI bus. The REQQ and ACKQ signals are used in the same fashion as the REQ and ACK signals, but due to propagation time differences, the timing between the two sets of signals may not be identical. In the timing descriptions in this subclause, references to the REQx and ACKx signals apply between the REQ and ACK signals for all 8/16 bit data transfers and between the REQQ and ACKQ signals for 32 bit transfers.

The information transfer phases use one or more REQx/ACKx handshakes to control the information transfer. Each REQx/ACKx handshake allows the transfer of 8, 16, or 32 bits of information depending on the negotiated data transfer width (see 11.5.2.15). During the information transfer phases the BSY signal shall remain true and the SEL signal shall remain false. Additionally, during the information transfer phases, the target shall continuously envelope the REQx/ACKx handshake(s) with the C/D, I/O, and MSG

signals in such a manner that these control signals are valid for a bus settle delay before the assertion of the REQ signal of the first handshake and remain valid until after the negation of the ACKx signal at the end of the handshake of the last transfer of the phase.

NOTE 32 - After the negation of the ACKx signal of the last transfer of the phase, the target may prepare for a new phase by asserting or negating the C/D, I/O, and MSG signals. These signals may be changed together or individually. They may be changed in any order and may be changed more than once. It is desirable that each line change only once. A new phase does not begin until the REQx signal is asserted for the first byte of the new phase.

NOTE 33 - A phase is defined as ending when the C/D, I/O, or MSG signals change after the negation of the ACKx signal. The time between the end of a phase and the assertion of the REQx signal beginning a new phase is undefined. An initiator is allowed to anticipate a new phase based on the previous phase, the expected new phase, and early information provided by changes in the C/D, I/O, and MSG signals. However, the anticipated phase is not valid until the REQx signal is asserted at the beginning of the next.

Table 43 - Information transfer phases

Signal			Phase	Direction of transfer	Comment
MSG	C/D	I/O			
0	0	0	DATA OUT	Initiator to target	Data phase
0	0	1	DATA IN	Initiator from target	
0	1	0	COMMAND	Initiator to target	
0	1	1	STATUS	Initiator from target	
1	0	0	note		
1	0	1	note		
1	1	0	MESSAGE OUT	Initiator to target	Message phase
1	1	1	MESSAGE IN	Initiator from target	
Key: 0 = False; 1 = True					
Note: Reserved for future standardization.					

11.1.5.1 Asynchronous information transfer

The target shall control the direction of information transfer by means of the I/O signal. When the I/O signal is true, information shall be transferred from the target to the initiator. When the I/O signal is false, information shall be transferred from the initiator to the target.

If the I/O signal is true (transfer to the initiator), the target shall first drive the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals to their desired values, delay at least one deskew delay plus a cable skew delay, then assert the REQx signal. The DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals shall remain valid until the ACKx signal is true at the target. The initiator shall read the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals after the REQx signal is true, then indicate its acceptance of the data by asserting the ACKx signal. When the ACKx signal becomes true at the target, the target may

change or release the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals and shall negate the REQx signal. After the REQx signal is false the initiator shall then negate the ACKx signal. After the ACKx signal is false the target may continue the transfer by driving the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals and asserting the REQx signal, as described above.

If the I/O signal is false (transfer to the target) the target shall request information by asserting the REQx signal. The initiator shall drive the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals to their desired values, delay at least one deskew delay plus a cable skew delay and assert the ACKx signal. The initiator shall continue to drive the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals until the REQx signal is false. When the ACKx signal becomes true at the target, the target shall read the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals then negate the REQx signal. When the REQx signal becomes false at the initiator, the initiator may change or release the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals and shall negate the ACKx signal. After the ACKx signal is false the target may continue the transfer by asserting the REQx signal, as described above.

11.1.5.2 Synchronous data transfer

Synchronous data transfer is optional and is only used in data phases. It shall be used in a data phase if a synchronous data transfer agreement has been established (see 6.6.21). The agreement specifies the REQx/ACKx offset and the minimum transfer period.

The REQx/ACKx offset specifies the maximum number of REQx pulses that can be sent by the target in advance of the number of ACKx pulses received from the initiator, establishing a pacing mechanism. If the number of REQx pulses exceeds the number of ACKx pulses by the REQx/ACKx offset, the target shall not assert the REQx signal until after the leading edge of the next ACKx pulse is received. For successful completion of the data phase is that the number of ACKx and REQx pulses shall be equal.

The target shall assert the REQx signal for a minimum of an assertion period. The target shall then wait at least the greater of a transfer period from the last transition of the REQx signal to true or a minimum of a negation period from the last transition of the REQx signal to false before again asserting the REQx signal.

The initiator shall send one pulse on the ACKx signal for each REQx pulse received. The ACKx signal may be asserted as soon as the leading edge of the corresponding REQx pulse has been received. The initiator shall assert the ACKx signal for a minimum of an assertion period. The initiator shall wait at least the greater of a transfer period from the last transition of the ACKx signal to true or for a minimum of a negation period from the last transition of the ACKx signal to false before asserting the ACKx signal.

If the I/O signal is true (transfer to the initiator), the target shall first drive the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals to their desired values, wait at least one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay, then assert the REQx signal. The DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals shall be held valid for a minimum of one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay plus one hold time after the assertion of the REQx signal. The target shall assert the REQx signal for a minimum of an assertion period. The target may then negate the REQx signal and change or release the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals. The initiator shall read the value on the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals within one hold time of the transition of the REQx signal to true. The initiator shall then respond with an ACKx pulse.

If the I/O signal is false (transfer to the target), the initiator shall transfer one byte for each REQx pulse received. After receiving the leading edge of a REQx pulse, the initiator shall first drive the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals to their desired values, delay at least one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay, then assert the ACKx signal. The initiator shall hold the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals valid for at least one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay plus one hold time after the assertion of the ACKx signal. The initiator shall assert the ACKx signal for a minimum of an assertion period. The initiator may then negate the ACKx signal and may change or release the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals. The target shall read the value of the DB(7-0,P), DB(15-0,P,P1), or DB(31-0,P,P1,P2) signals within one hold time of the transition of the ACKx signal to true.

11.1.5.3 Wide data transfer

The DATA IN and DATA OUT phases contain a data bus width parameter that specifies the width of the data path used to transfer the word.

During 8-bit data transfers, the logical data byte for each data phase shall be transferred across the DB(7-0,P) signals on the primary SCSI bus. At the receiving device the DB(15-8,P1) (if present) signals are undefined and parity may not be valid. Subsequent data bytes are likewise transferred using DB(7-0,P).

During 16-bit wide data transfers, the first and second logical data bytes for each data phase shall be transferred across the DB(7-0,P) and DB(15-8,P1) signals, respectively, on the primary SCSI bus. Subsequent pairs of data bytes are likewise transferred in parallel across the primary SCSI bus (see figure 51).

.

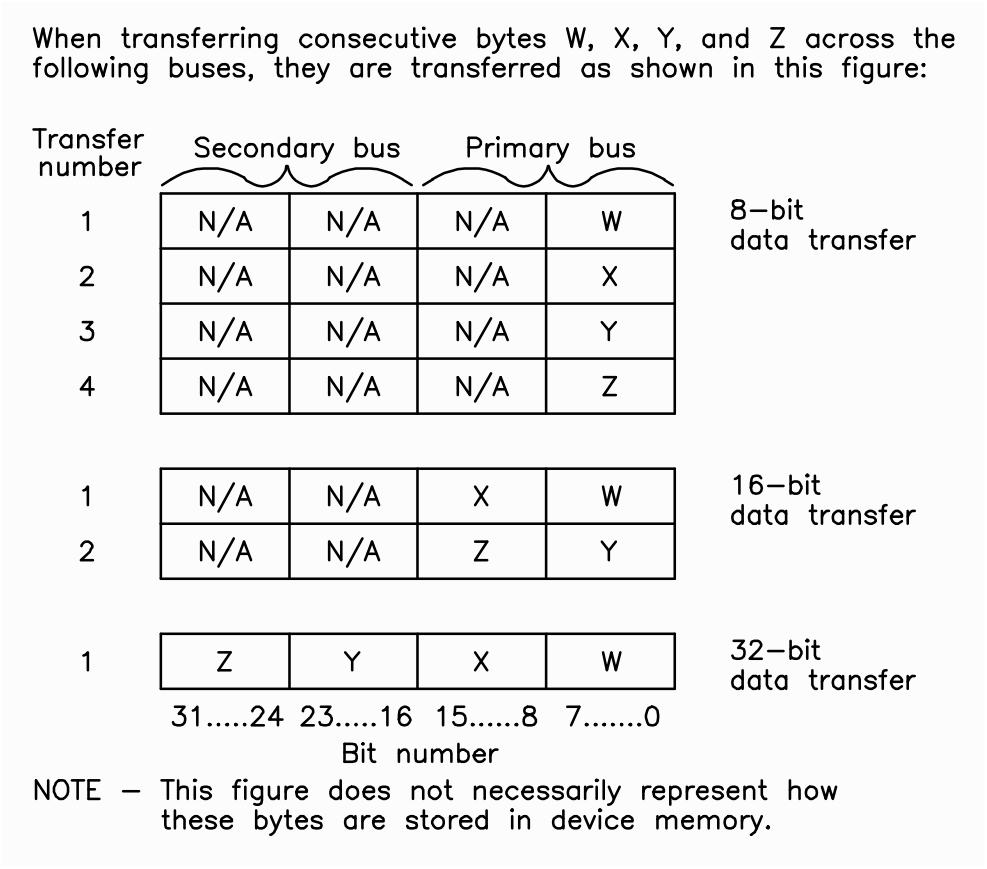


Figure 51 - Wide SCSI byte order

During 32-bit wide data transfers, the first and second logical data bytes shall be transferred across the DB(7-0,P) and DB(15-8,P1) signals, respectively. The third and fourth logical data bytes shall be transferred across the DB(23-16,P2) and DB(31-24,P3) signals, respectively. Subsequent sets of four data bytes are likewise transferred in parallel (see figure 51).

If the last logical data byte transferred does not fall on the DB(15-8) signals for a 16-bit wide transfer or the DB(31-24) signals for a 32-bit wide transfer, then the values of the remaining higher-numbered bits are undefined. However, parity bits for these undefined bytes shall be valid for whatever data is placed on the bus.

To ensure proper data integrity on a 32-bit wide data bus, certain sequence requirements shall be met between the primary SCSI bus and the secondary SCSI bus:

a) The REQQ and ACKQ signals shall only be asserted during DATA IN and DATA OUT phases. These signals shall not be asserted during other phases;
b) The same information transfer mode (asynchronous or synchronous) shall be used for both the primary and secondary SCSI busses. If synchronous data transfer mode is in effect, the same REQ/ACK offset and transfer period shall be used for both busses;
c) The target shall ensure that the number of REQx/ACKx handshakes on both the primary and secondary SCSI busses in a data phase are equal before it changes to another phase. The target shall not have a new phase, until the ACK and ACKQ signals have both become false for the last REQx/ACKx handshake.

If any violations of these rules are detected by the target, the target may attempt to end the data phase and return CHECK CONDITION status. If it is impossible to correctly terminate the data phase, the target may abnormally terminate the task by an unexpected disconnect. If any violations of these rules are detected by the initiator, the initiator may attempt to send an INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message to the target. If the initiator is unable to terminate the task normally, it may generate a hard reset.

The only pacing mechanism available for a target to manage the timing relationship between the signals on the two busses is its management of the REQ and REQQ signals. Similarly, the only pacing mechanism for the initiator to manage the timing between the two busses is its management of the ACK and ACKQ signals.

11.1.6 COMMAND phase

The COMMAND phase allows the target to request command information from the initiator.

The target shall assert the C/D signal and negate the I/O and MSG signals during the REQ/ACK handshake(s) of this phase.

11.1.7 Data phase

The data phase is a term that encompasses both the DATA IN phase and the DATA OUT phase.

11.1.7.1 DATA IN phase

The DATA IN phase allows the target to request that data be sent to the initiator from the target.

The target shall assert the I/O signal and negate the C/D and MSG signals during the REQx/ACKx handshake(s) of this phase.

11.1.7.2 DATA OUT phase

The DATA OUT phase allows the target to request that data be sent from the initiator to the target.

The target shall negate the C/D, I/O, and MSG signals during the REQx/ACKx handshake(s) of this phase.

11.1.8 STATUS phase

The STATUS phase allows the target to request that status information be sent from the target to the initiator.

The target shall assert the C/D and I/O signals and negate the MSG signal during the REQ/ACK handshake of this phase.

11.1.8.1 STATUS phase exception condition handling

If the initiator detects a parity error on the status byte the initiator shall create an attention condition. When the target switches to a MESSAGE OUT phase the initiator shall send an INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message (see 11.5.2.5) to the target. This message notifies the target that the status byte was invalid.

11.1.9 Message phase

The message phase is a term that references either a MESSAGE IN, or a MESSAGE OUT phase. Multiple messages may be sent during either phase. The first byte transferred in either of these phases shall be either a single-byte message or the first byte of a multiple-byte message. Multiple-byte messages shall be wholly contained within a single message phase.

11.1.9.1 MESSAGE IN phase

The MESSAGE IN phase allows the target to request that message(s) be sent to the initiator from the target.

The target shall assert the C/D, I/O, and MSG signals during the REQ/ACK handshake(s) of this phase.

11.1.9.1.1 MESSAGE IN phase exception condition handling

If the initiator detects a parity error on any message byte it receives the initiator shall create an attention condition. When the target switches to a MESSAGE OUT phase the initiator shall send a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message (see 11.5.2.6) to the target. This message notifies the target that the message in byte was invalid.

11.1.9.2 MESSAGE OUT phase

The MESSAGE OUT phase allows the target to request that message(s) be sent from the initiator to the target. The target invokes this phase in response to the attention condition created by the initiator (see 11.2.1).

The target shall assert the C/D and MSG signals and negate the I/O signal during the REQ/ACK handshake(s) of this phase. The target shall handshake byte(s) in this phase until the ATN signal is negated, except when rejecting a message.

If the target receives all of the message byte(s) successfully (i.e. no parity errors), it shall indicate that it does not wish to retry by changing to any information transfer phase other than the MESSAGE OUT phase and transfer at least one byte. The target may also indicate that it has successfully received the message byte(s) by changing to the BUS FREE phase (e.g. ABORT TASK SET or TARGET RESET messages).

11.1.9.2.1 MESSAGE OUT phase exception condition handling

If the target detects one or more parity error(s) on the message byte(s) received, it may indicate its desire to retry the message(s) by asserting the REQ signal after detecting the ATN signal has gone false and prior to changing to any other phase. The initiator, upon detecting this condition, shall resend all of the previous message byte(s) in the same order as previously sent during this phase. When resending more than one message byte, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal at least two deskew delays prior to asserting the ACK signal on the first byte and shall maintain the ATN signal asserted until the last byte is sent as described in 11.2.1.

If the target does not retry the MESSAGE OUT phase or it exhausts its retry limit it may;

a) return CHECK CONDITION status and set the sense key to ABORTED COMMAND and the additional sense code to MESSAGE ERROR or;
b) indicate an exception condition by performing an unexpected disconnect.

The target may act on messages as received as long as no parity error is detected and may ignore all remaining messages sent under one ATN condition after a parity error is detected. When a sequence of messages is resent by an initiator because of a target detected parity error, the target shall not act on any message which it acted on the first time received.

11.1.10 Signal restrictions between phases

When the SCSI bus is between two information transfer phases, the following restrictions shall apply to the SCSI bus signals:

a) The BSY, SEL, REQ, REQQ, ACK and ACKQ signals shall not change.
b) The C/D, I/O, MSG, and DATA BUS signals may change. When switching the DATA BUS direction from out (initiator driving) to in (target driving), the target shall delay driving the DATA BUS by at least a data release delay plus a bus settle delay after asserting the I/O signal and the initiator shall release the DATA BUS no later than a data release delay after the transition of the I/O signal to true. When switching the DATA BUS direction from in (target driving) to out (initiator driving), the target shall release the DATA BUS no later than a deskew delay after negating the I/O signal.
c) The ATN and RST signals may change as defined under the descriptions for the attention condition (see 11.2.1) and hard reset (see 11.2.2).

11.2 SCSI bus conditions

The SCSI bus has two asynchronous conditions; the attention condition and the hard reset. These conditions cause the SCSI device to perform certain actions and can alter the phase sequence.

Furthermore, SCSI devices may not all be powered-on at the same time. This standard does not address power sequencing issues. However, each SCSI device, as it is powered on, should perform appropriate internal reset operations and internal test operations. Following a power-on to selection time after power-on, SCSI targets should be able to respond with appropriate status and sense data to the TEST UNIT READY, INQUIRY, and REQUEST SENSE commands.

11.2.1 Attention condition

The attention condition allows an initiator to inform a target that the initiator has a message ready. The target may get this message by performing a MESSAGE OUT phase.

The initiator creates the attention condition by asserting ATN at any time except during the ARBITRATION or BUS FREE phases.

The initiator shall negate the ATN signal at least two deskew delays before asserting the ACK signal while transferring the last byte of the messages indicated with a Yes in tables 46, 56, and 61. If the target detects that the initiator failed to meet this requirement, then the target shall go to BUS FREE phase (see 11.1.1).

The initiator shall assert the ATN signal at least two deskew delays before negating the ACK signal for the last byte transferred in a bus phase for the attention condition to be honored before transition to a new bus phase. Asserting the ATN signal later might not be honored until a later bus phase and then may not result in the expected action.

A target shall respond with MESSAGE OUT phase as follows:

a) If the ATN signal becomes true during a COMMAND phase, the target shall enter MESSAGE OUT phase after transferring part or all of the command descriptor block bytes.
b) If the ATN signal becomes true during a DATA phase, the target shall enter MESSAGE OUT phase at the target's earliest convenience (often, but not necessarily on a logical block boundary). The initiator shall continue REQ/ACK handshakes until it detects the phase change.

c) If the ATN signal becomes true during a STATUS phase, the target shall enter MESSAGE OUT phase after the status byte has been acknowledged by the initiator.
d) If the ATN signal becomes true during a MESSAGE IN phase, the target shall enter MESSAGE OUT phase before it sends another message. This permits a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message from the initiator to be associated with the appropriate message.
e) If the ATN signal becomes true during a SELECTION phase and before the initiator releases the BSY signal, the target shall enter MESSAGE OUT phase immediately after that SELECTION phase.
f) If the ATN signal becomes true during a RESELECTION phase, the target shall enter MESSAGE OUT phase after the target has sent its IDENTIFY message for that RESELECTION phase.

NOTE 34 - The initiator should only assert the ATN signal during a RESELECTION phase to transmit a TARGET RESET or DISCONNECT message. Other uses may result in ambiguities concerning the nexus.

The initiator shall keep the ATN signal asserted if more than one byte is to be transferred. The initiator may negate the ATN signal at any time except it shall not negate the ATN signal while the ACK signal is asserted during a MESSAGE OUT phase. Normally, the initiator negates the ATN signal while the REQ signal is true and the ACK signal is false during the last REQ/ACK handshake of the MESSAGE OUT phase.

11.2.2 Hard reset

The hard reset is used to immediately clear all SCSI devices from the bus. This condition shall take precedence over all other phases and conditions. Any SCSI device may create the reset condition by asserting the RST signal for a minimum of a reset hold time.

All SCSI devices shall release all SCSI bus signals (except the RST signal) within a bus clear delay of the transition of the RST signal to true. The BUS FREE phase always follows the reset condition.

The effect of the hard reset on tasks that have not completed, SCSI device reservations, and SCSI device operating modes is defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

In addition to the hard reset characteristics defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard this standard has the following hard reset characteristics:

a) may or may not change the SCSI ID.

NOTE 35 - Environmental conditions (e.g. static discharge) may generate brief glitches on the RST signal. It is recommended that SCSI devices not react to these glitches. The manner of rejecting glitches is vendor-specific. The bus clear delay following a RST signal transition to true is measured from the original transition of the RST signal, not from the time that the signal has been confirmed. This limits the time to confirm the RST signal to a maximum of a bus clear delay.

11.2.3 Reset events

When an SCSI device detects a reset event it shall initiate a hard reset (see 11.2.2).

11.2.3.1 Transceiver mode change reset event

When an SCSI device that contains multimode transceivers detects a transceiver mode change from LVD mode to SE mode it shall cause a reset event. In response to the transceiver mode change reset event, a target shall create a unit attention condition for all initiators. The unit attention condition sense key shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION, and the additional sense code set to TRANSCEIVER MODE CHANGED TO SE.

When an SCSI device that contains multimode transceivers detects a transceiver mode change from SE mode to LVD mode it shall cause a reset event. In response to the transceiver mode change reset event, a target shall create a unit attention condition for all initiators. The unit attention condition sense key shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION, and the additional sense code set to TRANSCEIVER MODE CHANGED TO

LVD.

Any SCSI device that detects a transceiver mode change shall set the data transfer width to eight-bit transfer mode and the data transfer mode to asynchronous data transfer mode.

11.3 SCSI bus phase sequences

The order in which phases are used on the SCSI bus follows a prescribed sequence.

A hard reset can abort any phase and is always followed by the BUS FREE phase. Also any other phase can be followed by the BUS FREE phase but many such instances are error conditions (see 11.1.1.1).

The additional allowable sequences shall be as shown in figure 52. The normal progression is from the BUS FREE phase to ARBITRATION, from ARBITRATION to SELECTION or RESELECTION, and from SELECTION or RESELECTION to one or more of the information transfer phases (COMMAND, DATA, STATUS, or MESSAGE). The final information transfer phase is normally the MESSAGE IN phase where a DISCONNECT, or COMMAND COMPLETE message is transferred, followed by the BUS FREE phase.

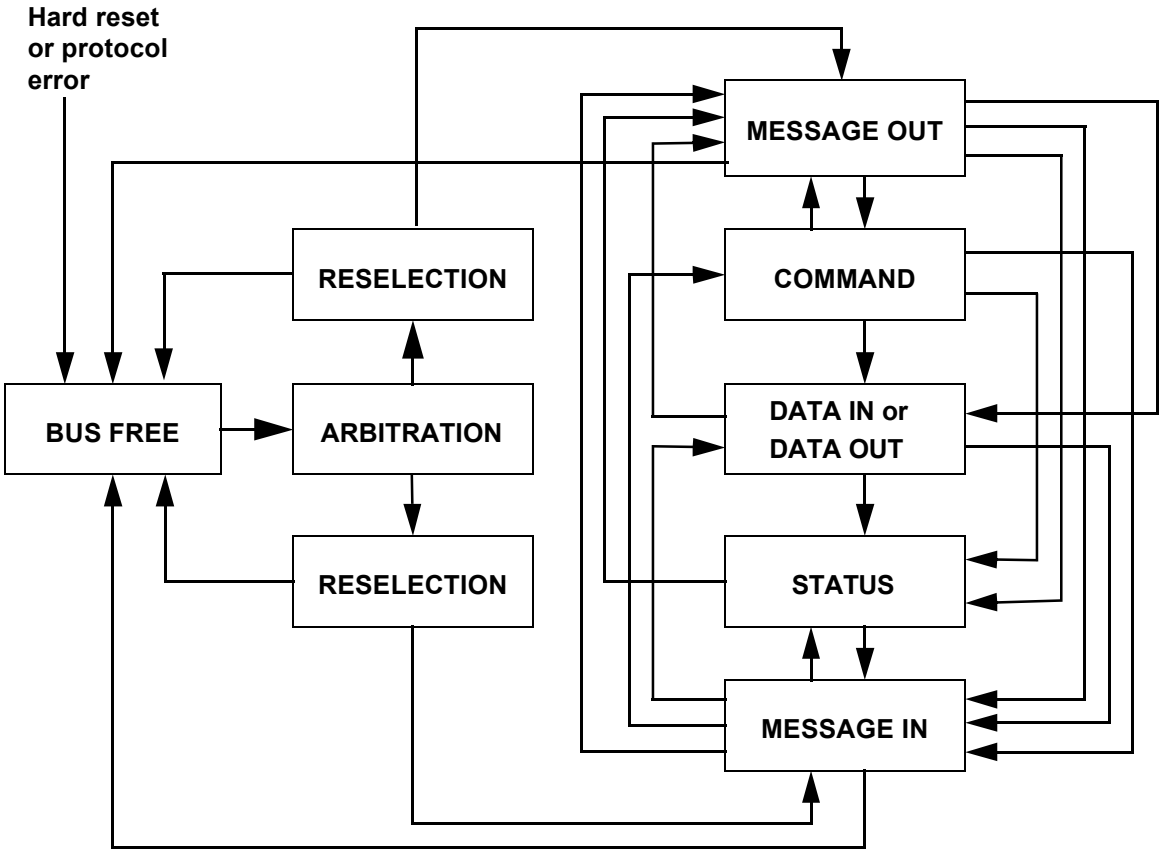


Figure 52 - Phase sequences

11.4 SCSI pointers

The initiator provides for a set of three pointers for each task, called the saved pointers. The set of three pointers consist of one for the command, one for the data, and one for the status. When a send command service is received from an application client, the task's three saved pointers are copied into the initiator 's set of three active pointers. There is only one set of active pointers in each initiator. The active pointers

point to the next command, data, or status byte to be transferred between the initiator and the target. The saved and active pointers reside in the initiator.

The saved command pointer always points to the start of the command descriptor block for the task. The saved status pointer always points to the start of the status area for the task. The saved data pointer points to the start of the data area until the target sends a SAVE DATA POINTER message for the task.

In response to the SAVE DATA POINTER message, the initiator stores the value of the active data pointer into the saved data pointer for that task. The target may restore the active pointers to the saved pointer values for the current task by sending a RESTORE POINTERS message to the initiator. The initiator then copies the set of saved pointers into the set of active pointers. Whenever a target disconnects from the bus, only the set of saved pointers are retained. The set of active pointers is restored from the set of saved pointers upon reconnection of the task.

Since the data pointer value may be modified by the target before the task ends, it should not be used to test for actual transfer length because the value may no longer be valid.

11.5 SCSI Interlocked Protocol messages

SCSI interlocked protocol messages allow communication between an initiator and a target for the purpose of link management. The link management messages used for this purpose are defined within this standard and their use is confined to this standard. Other SCSI interlocked protocol messages allow communication between the application client and the task manager for the purpose of task management. The task management messages are defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard, however, their binary values for the SCSI Parallel Interface-2 Standard are defined by this standard.

11.5.1 Message protocols and formats

11.5.1.1 Message protocol rules

One or more messages may be sent during a single MESSAGE phase, but a message may not be split between multiple MESSAGE phases.

The first message sent by the initiator after a successful SELECTION phase shall be an IDENTIFY, ABORT TASK SET, or TARGET RESET message. If a target receives any other message it shall switch to a BUS FREE phase (see 11.1.1.1).

If the first message is an IDENTIFY message, then it may be immediately followed by other messages, such as the first of a pair of SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST messages. With tagged queuing a task attribute shall immediately follow the IDENTIFY message, then more messages may immediately follow. The IDENTIFY message establishes a logical connection between the initiator and the specified logical unit within the target known as an I_T_L nexus. After the RESELECTION phase, the target's first message shall be IDENTIFY. This allows the I_T_L nexus to be re-established. Only one logical unit shall be identified for any connection; if a target receives a second IDENTIFY message with a different logical unit number during a connection, it shall cause an unexpected bus free by generating a BUS FREE phase (see 11.1.1.1).

All initiators shall implement the mandatory messages tabulated in the "Initiator" column of tables 46, 56, and 61. All targets shall implement the mandatory messages tabulated in the "Target" column of tables 46, 56, and 61.

The initiator is required to end the MESSAGE OUT phase (by negating ATN) when it sends certain messages identified in tables 46, 56, and 61. These messages are identified by a “Yes” entry in the column headed “Negate ATN Before Dropping ACK”.

Whenever an I_T_L nexus is established by an initiator that is allowing disconnection, the initiator shall

ensure that the active pointers are equal to the saved pointers for that particular logical unit. An implied restore pointers operation shall occur as a result of a RECONNECTION phase.

11.5.1.2 Message formats

One-byte, Two-byte, and Extended message formats are defined. The first byte of the message determines the format as defined in table 44.

Table 44 - Message format

Code	Message format
00h	One-byte message (TASK COMPLETE)
01h	Extended messages
02h - 13h	One-byte messages
14h - 15h	Reserved One-byte messages
16h - 17h	One-byte messages
18h - 1Fh	Reserved One-byte messages
20h - 24h	Two-byte messages
25h - 2Fh	Reserved Two-byte messages
30h - 7Fh	Reserved
80h - FFh	One-byte message (IDENTIFY)

11.5.1.2.1 One-byte messages

One-byte messages consist of a single byte transferred during a MESSAGE IN phase or a MESSAGE OUT phase. The code of the byte determines which message is to be performed as defined in tables 46, 56, and 61.

11.5.1.2.2 Two-byte messages

Two-byte messages consist of two consecutive bytes transferred during two consecutive MESSAGE IN phases or two consecutive MESSAGE OUT phases. The code of the first byte determines which message is to be performed as defined in tables 46, 56, and 61. The second byte is a parameter byte which is used as defined in the message description.

11.5.1.2.3 Extended messages

A value of 01h in the first byte of a message indicates the beginning of a multiple-byte extended message. The minimum number of bytes sent for an extended message is three. All of the extended message bytes shall be transferred in consecutive MESSAGE IN phases or consecutive MESSAGE OUT phases. The extended message format is shown in table 45.

Table 45 - Extended message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	EXTENDED MESSAGE (01h)							
1	EXTENDED MESSAGE LENGTH (n-1)							
2	EXTENDED MESSAGE CODE (y)							
3-n	EXTENDED MESSAGE ARGUMENTS							

The EXTENDED MESSAGE LENGTH specifies the length in bytes of the EXTENDED MESSAGE CODE plus the extended message arguments to follow. Therefore, the total length of the message is equal to the EXTENDED MESSAGE LENGTH plus two. A value of zero for the EXTENDED MESSAGE LENGTH indicates 256 bytes follow.

The EXTENDED MESSAGE CODEs are listed in table 46.

The EXTENDED MESSAGE ARGUMENTS are specified within the extended message descriptions (see 11.5.2.8, 11.5.2.12, and 11.5.2.15).

11.5.2 Link control messages

Table 46 - Link control message codes

Code	Support		Message Name	Direction		Negate ATN before last ACK
	Initiator	Target				
12h	O	O	CONTINUE TASK		Out	Yes
04h	O	O	DISCONNECT	In		n/a
04h	O	O	DISCONNECT		Out	Yes
80h+	M	O	IDENTIFY	In		n/a
80h+	M	M	IDENTIFY		Out	Not required
23h	O	O	IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE	In		n/a
05h	M	M	INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR		Out	Yes
09h	M	M	MESSAGE PARITY ERROR		Out	Yes
07h	M	M	MESSAGE REJECT	In	Out	Yes
***	O	O	MODIFY DATA POINTER	In		n/a
08h	M	M	NO OPERATION		Out	Yes
03h	O	O	RESTORE POINTERS	In		n/a
02h	O	O	SAVE DATA POINTER	In		n/a
***	O	O	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST	In	Out	Yes
13h	O	O	TARGET TRANSFER DISABLE		Out	Yes
00h	M	M	TASK COMPLETE	In		n/a
***	O	O	WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST	In	Out	Yes

Key: M=Mandatory support, O=Optional support
In=Target to initiator, Out=Initiator to target
Yes=Initiator shall negate ATN before last ACK of message.
Not required=Initiator may or may not negate ATN before last ACK of message (see 11.2.1).
n/a=Not applicable
***=Extended message
80h+=Codes 80h through FFh are used for IDENTIFY messages

11.5.2.1 CONTINUE TASK

The CONTINUE TASK message is sent from the initiator to the target to reconnect to a task. This message shall be sent as one of the messages within the consecutive MESSAGE OUT phases sent after the IDENTIFY message.

Thus the messages within the consecutive MESSAGE OUT phases following a SELECTION phase consists of the IDENTIFY, task attribute (if any), and CONTINUE TASK messages.

The purpose of the CONTINUE TASK message is to distinguish a valid initiator attempt at a reconnection

phase from an incorrect initiator reconnection phase.

If the target expects a significant delay before it will be ready to continue processing the reconnected task, it may attempt to free the SCSI bus by sending a DISCONNECT message to the initiator. The initiator may reject the disconnection attempt by responding with MESSAGE REJECT message.

If the CONTINUE TASK message occurs on an initial connection then the target shall switch to a BUS FREE phase.

If the CONTINUE TASK message occurs on a subsequent connection then the target may either treat this as a dynamic head-of-queue request or it may reject the message with a MESSAGE REJECT message.

An initiator that gets rejected should set the attention flag to one and send an ABORT TAG message on the resulting MESSAGE OUT phase. Otherwise, the target may treat the connection as an overlapped command (see 11.6.2).

Initiator s should avoid sending this message to target s that have not implemented this message. Such target s may not respond as described in this section. An application client can determine whether a device server implements this message by examining the TRANDIS bit in the standard INQUIRY data (see SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard). The application client shall inform the initiator to use the CONTINE TASK message by issuing a TARGET TRANSFER DISABLE link control function in the send SCSI command phase.

11.5.2.2 DISCONNECT

The DISCONNECT message is sent from a target to inform an initiator that the present connection is going to be broken (the target plans to disconnect by releasing the BSY signal), but that a later reconnect will be required in order to complete the current task. This message shall not cause the initiator to save the data pointer. After successfully sending this message, the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase by releasing the BSY signal. The target shall consider the message transmission to be successful when it detects the negation of the ACK signal for the DISCONNECT message with the ATN signal false.

Targets that break data transfers into multiple connections shall end each successful connection (except possibly the last) with a SAVE DATA POINTER - DISCONNECT message sequence.

This message may also be sent from an initiator to a target to instruct the target to disconnect from the SCSI bus. If this option is supported, and after the DISCONNECT message is received, the target shall switch to MESSAGE IN phase, send the DISCONNECT message to the initiator (possibly preceded by SAVE DATA POINTER message), and then disconnect by releasing BSY. After releasing the BSY signal, the target shall not participate in another ARBITRATION phase for at least a disconnection delay or the time limit specified in the DISCONNECT TIME LIMIT mode parameter (see 11.7) whichever is greater. If this option is not supported or the target cannot disconnect at the time when it receives the DISCONNECT message from the initiator, the target shall respond by sending a MESSAGE REJECT message to the initiator.

11.5.2.3 IDENTIFY

The IDENTIFY message (see table 47) is sent by either the initiator or the target to establish an I_T_L nexus.

Table 47 - IDENTIFY message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	IDENTIFY	DISCPRIV	LUN					

The IDENTIFY bit shall be set to one to specify that this is an IDENTIFY message.

A disconnect privilege (DISCPRIV) bit of one specifies that the initiator has granted the target the privilege of disconnecting. A DISCPRIV bit of zero specifies that the target shall not disconnect. This bit is not defined and shall be set to zero when an IDENTIFY message is sent by a target.

The target shall generate a BUSY status (see SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard) for a task not granting disconnect privilege (discpriv bit set to zero) in the IDENNTIFY message if:

a) there are any pending tasks, and
b) the target determines that reconnection of one or more pending tasks is required before the current task can be completed.

The LUN field specifies a logical unit number.

Only one logical unit number shall be identified per task. The initiator may send one or more IDENTIFY messages during a connection. A second IDENTIFY message with a different value in the LUN field shall not be issued before a BUS FREE phase has occurred; if a target receives a second IDENTIFY message with a different value in this field, it shall cause an unexpected bus free (see 11.1.1.1) by generating a BUS FREE phase. Thus an initiator may change the DISCPRIV bit, but may not attempt to switch to another task. (See the DTDC field of the disconnect/reconnect mode page in the SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard for additional controls over disconnection.)

An implied RESTORE POINTERS message shall be performed by the initiator prior to the assertion of the ACK signal on the next phase for an inbound IDENTIFY message sent following reconnection.

An implied RESTORE POINTERS message shall be performed by the initiator following successful identification of the nexus during the MESSAGE IN phase of a reconnection and before the negation of the ACK signal for the next transfer following the successful identification.

Identification is considered successful during an initial connection or an initiator reconnect when the target detects no error during the transfer of the IDENTIFY message and an optional task attribute message in the MESSAGE OUT phase immediately following the SELECTION phase. See 11.5.3 for the ordering of the IDENTIFY and task attribute messages. See 11.1.9.2.1 for handling target detected errors during the MESSAGE OUT phase.

Identification is considered successful during a target reconnect when the ATN signal is not asserted during the transfer of either the IDENTIFY message or the SIMPLE message for an I_T_L_Q nexus in the MESSAGE IN phase immediately following the RESELECTION phase. See the 11.5.3 for the ordering of the IDENTIFY and task attribute messages. See 11.2.1, item d), for handling target detected errors during the MESSAGE IN phase.

11.5.2.4 IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE

The IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE message (see table 48) shall be sent from a target to indicate that the number of valid bytes sent in the last REQ/ACK handshake and REQQ/ACKQ handshake data of a DATA IN phase is less than the negotiated transfer width. This message shall be sent immediately following that

DATA IN phase and prior to any other messages.

Table 48 - IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	MESSAGE CODE (23h)							
1	NUMBER OF BYTES TO IGNORE (01h, 02h, 03h)							

The NUMBER OF BYTES TO IGNORE field indicates the number of invalid data bytes transferred. See table 49 for a definition of the IGNORE field codes.

NOTE 36 - More than one IGNORE WIDE RESIDUE message may occur during a task.

Table 49 - IGNORE **field definition**

Codes	Invalid data bits	
	32-bit transfers	16-bit transfers
00h	Reserved	Reserved
01h	DB(31-24)	DB(15-8)
02h	DB(31-16)	Reserved
03h	DB(31-8)	Reserved
04h-FFh	Reserved	Reserved

11.5.2.5 INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR

The INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message is sent from an initiator to inform a target that an error has occurred that does not preclude the target from retrying the task. The source of the error may either be related to previous activities on the SCSI bus or may be internal to the initiator and unrelated to any previous SCSI bus activity. Although the integrity of the currently active pointers in not assured, a RESTORE POINTERS message or a disconnect followed by a reconnect, shall cause the pointers to be restored to their defined prior state.

11.5.2.6 MESSAGE PARITY ERROR

The MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message is sent from the initiator to the target to indicate that it received a message byte with a parity error (see 11.1.9.2.1).

In order to indicate its intentions of sending this message, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal prior to its release of the ACK signal for the REQ/ACK handshake of the message byte that has the parity error. This provides an interlock so that the target can determine which message byte has the parity error. If the target receives this message under any other circumstance, it shall signal a catastrophic error condition by releasing the BSY signal without any further information transfer attempt (see 11.1.1).

If after receiving the MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message the target returns to the MESSAGE IN phase before switching to some other phase, the target shall resend the entire message that had the parity error.

11.5.2.7 MESSAGE REJECT

The MESSAGE REJECT message is sent from either the initiator or target to indicate that the last message or message byte it received was inappropriate or has not been implemented.

In order to indicate its intentions of sending this message, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal prior to its release of the ACK signal for the REQ/ACK handshake of the message byte that is to be rejected. If the target receives this message under any other circumstance, it shall reject this message.

When a target sends this message, it shall change to MESSAGE IN phase and send this message prior to requesting additional message bytes from the initiator. This provides an interlock so that the initiator can determine which message byte is rejected.

After a target sends a MESSAGE REJECT message and if the ATN signal is still asserted, then it shall return to the MESSAGE OUT phase. The subsequent MESSAGE OUT phase shall begin with the first byte of a message.

11.5.2.8 MODIFY DATA POINTER

The MODIFY DATA POINTER message (see table 50) is sent from the target to the initiator and requests that the signed ARGUMENT be added (two's complement) to the value of the current data pointer. The Enable Modify Data Pointer (EMDP) bit in the Disconnect-Reconnect mode page (see SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard) indicates whether or not the target is permitted to issue the MODIFY DATA POINTER message.

Table 50 - MODIFY DATA POINTER message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	EXTENDED MESSAGE (01h)							
1	EXTENDED MESSAGE LENGTH (05h)							
2	MODIFY DATA POINTER (00h)							
3	(MSB)							
4				ARGUMENT				
5								
6								(LSB)

11.5.2.9 NO OPERATION

The NO OPERATION message is sent from an initiator in response to a target 's request for a message when the initiator does not currently have any other valid message to send.

For example, if the target does not respond to the attention condition until a later phase and at that time the original message is no longer valid the initiator may send the NO OPERATION message when the target switches to a MESSAGE OUT phase.

11.5.2.10 RESTORE POINTERS

The RESTORE POINTERS message is sent from a target to direct the initiator to copy the most recently saved command, data, and status pointers for the task to the corresponding active pointers. The command and status pointers shall be restored to the beginning of the present command and status areas. The data pointer shall be restored to the value at the beginning of the data area in the absence of a SAVE DATA POINTER message or to the value at the point at which the last SAVE DATA POINTER message occurred for that task.

11.5.2.11 SAVE DATA POINTER

The SAVE DATA POINTER message is sent from a target to direct the initiator to copy the current data pointer to the saved data pointer for the current task.

11.5.2.12 SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST

SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (SDTR) messages (see table 51) are used to negotiate a synchronous data transfer agreement between two SCSI devices.

Table 51 - SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	EXTENDED MESSAGE (01h)							
1	EXTENDED MESSAGE LENGTH (03h)							
2	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (01h)							
3	TRANSFER PERIOD FACTOR							
4	REQ/ACK OFFSET							

The TRANSFER PERIOD FACTOR field is defined in table 52.

Table 52 - TRANSFER PERIOD FACTOR field

Code	Description
00h-09h	Reserved (note 1)
0Ah	transfer period equals 25ns (note 2)
0Bh	transfer period equals 30,3ns (note 2)
0Ch	transfer period equals 50ns (note 3)
0Dh-FFh	transfer period equals the transfer period factor * 4 (note 4)
19h-FFh	transfer period equals the transfer period factor * 4 (note 5)
32h-FFh	transfer period equals the transfer period factor * 4 (note 6)

note:
1 - Faster timings may be allowed by future SCSI parallel interface standards.
2 - Fast-40 data transfer rates that have a period of less than 50ns.
3 - Fast-20 data transfer rates that have a period of less than 52ns.
4 - Fast-20 data transfer rates (i.e., 52ns - 1020ns).
5 - Fast-10 data transfer rates (i.e., 100ns - 1020ns).
6 - Fast-5 data transfer rates (i.e., 200ns - 1020ns).

Editors Note 7 - GOP: The above table has been changed to show the full ranges of the different fast-xx data transfer rates.

The REQ/ACK OFFSET is the maximum number of REQ pulses allowed to be outstanding before the leading edge of its corresponding ACK pulse is received at the target. The size of a data transfer may be 1, 2, or 4 bytes depending on what values, if any, have been previously negotiated through an exchange of WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST messages. The REQ/ACK OFFSET value is chosen to prevent overflow conditions in the device's reception buffer and offset counter. A REQ/ACK OFFSET value of zero shall indicate asynchronous data transfer mode; a value of FFh shall indicate unlimited REQ/ACK offset.

An SDTR agreement applies to all logical units of the two SCSI devices that negotiated agreement. That is, if SCSI device A, acting as an initiator negotiates a synchronous data transfer agreement with SCSI device B (a target), then the same data transfer agreement applies to SCSI devices A and B even if SCSI device B changes to an initiator.

A synchronous data transfer agreement only applies to the two SCSI devices that negotiate the agreement. Separate synchronous data transfer agreements are negotiated for each pair of SCSI devices. The synchronous data transfer agreement only applies to data phases.

An SDTR message exchange shall be initiated by an SCSI device whenever a previously arranged synchronous data transfer agreement may have become invalid. The agreement becomes invalid after any condition which may leave the data transfer agreement in an indeterminate state such as:

a) after a hard reset;
b) after a TARGET RESET message;

c) after a power cycle and;
d) after a successful WDTR message exchange;
e) after a change in the transceiver mode (e.g., LVD mode to SE mode).

In addition, an SCSI device may initiate an SDTR message exchange whenever it is appropriate to negotiate a new data transfer agreement (either synchronous or asynchronous). SCSI devices that are capable of synchronous data transfers shall not respond to an SDTR message with a MESSAGE REJECT message.

Renegotiation after every selection is not recommended, since a significant performance impact is likely.

The SDTR message exchange establishes the permissible transfer periods and the REQ/ACK offsets for all logical units on the two SCSI devices. This agreement only applies to DATA IN phases and DATA OUT phases. All other phases shall use asynchronous transfers.

The originating SCSI device (the SCSI device that sends the first of the pair of SDTR messages) sets its values according to the rules above to permit it to receive data successfully. If the responding SCSI device can also receive data successfully with these values (or smaller transfer periods or larger REQ/ACK offsets or both), it returns the same values in its SDTR message. If it requires a larger transfer period, a smaller REQ/ACK offset, or both in order to receive data successfully, it substitutes values in its SDTR message as required, returning unchanged any value not required to be changed. Each SCSI device when transmitting data shall respect the limits set by the other's SDTR message, but it is permitted to transfer data with larger transfer periods, smaller REQ/ACK offsets, or both than specified in the other's SDTR message. The successful completion of an exchange of SDTR messages implies an agreement as shown in table 53.

Table 53 - SDTR messages implied agreements

Responding agent SDTR response	Implied agreement
Non-zero REQ/ACK offset	Synchronous transfer (i.e.,Each SCSI device transmit data with a transfer period equal to or greater than and a REQ/ACK offset equal to or less than the values received in the other device's SDTR message).
REQ/ACK offset equal to zero	Asynchronous transfer
MESSAGE REJECT message	Asynchronous transfer

The implied synchronous agreement shall remain in effect until a TARGET RESET message is received, until a hard reset occurs, or until one of the two SCSI devices elects to modify the agreement. The default data transfer mode is asynchronous data transfer mode. The default data transfer mode is entered at power on, after a TARGET RESET message, after a successful WDTR exchange, or after a hard reset.

11.5.2.12.1 Target initiated SDTR negotiation

If the target recognizes that SDTR negotiation is required, it sends an SDTR message to the initiator.

Prior to releasing the ACK signal on the last byte of the SDTR message from the target, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal and respond with its SDTR message or with a MESSAGE REJECT message.

If an abnormal condition prevents the initiator from responding with a SDTR message or with a MESSGE REJECT message then both devices shall return to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices.

Following an initiator 's responding SDTR message, an implied agreement for synchronous operation shall not be considered to exist until the target leaves MESSAGE OUT phase, indicating that the target has accepted the SDTR negotiation.

After a vendor-specific number of retry attempts (greater than zero), if the target has not received the initiator 's responding SDTR message, it shall switch to a BUS FREE phase without any further information transfer attempt (see 11.1.1). This indicates that a catastrophic error condition has occurred. Both SCSI devices shall use the asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

If the target does not support any of the initiator’s responding SDTR message’s values the target shall switch to a MESSAGE IN phase and the first message shall be a MESSAGE REJECT message. In this case the implied agreement shall be considered to be negated and both SCSI devices shall use the asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices.

11.5.2.12.2 Initiator initiated SDTR negotiation

If the initiator recognizes that SDTR negotiation is required, it asserts the ATN signal and sends a SDTR message to begin the negotiating process. After successfully completing the MESSAGE OUT phase, the target shall respond with the SDTR message.

If an abnormal condition prevents the target from responding with a SDTR message or with a MESSGE REJECT message then both SCSI devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices.

Following a target 's responding SDTR message, an implied agreement for synchronous data transfers shall not be considered to exist until;

a) the initiator receives the last byte of the SDTR message and parity is valid; and
b) the target does not detect an assertion of the ATN signal before the ACK signal is released on the last byte of the SDTR message.

If the initiator does not support the target’s responding SDTR message’s values the initiator shall assert ATN and the first message shall be a MESSAGE REJECT message.

If during the SDTR message the initiator asserts the ATN signal and the first message out is either MESSAGE PARITY ERROR or MESSAGE REJECT the synchronous operation shall be considered to be negated by both the initiator and the target. In this case, both SCSI devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices.

For the MESSAGE PARITY ERROR case, the implied agreement shall be reinstated if a retransmittal of the second of the pair of messages is successfully accomplished. After a vendor-specific number of retry attempts (greater than zero), if the target continues to receive MESSAGE PARITY ERROR messages, it shall terminate the retry activity. This may be done either by switching to any other information transfer phase and transferring at least one byte of information or by going to the BUS FREE phase (see 11.1.1). The initiator shall accept such action as aborting the SDTR negotiation, and both SCSI devices shall go to asynchronous data transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices.

11.5.2.13 TARGET TRANSFER DISABLE

The TARGET TRANSFER DISABLE message is sent from an initiator to a target to request that subsequent reconnections for data transfer be done by the initiator instead of the target. The target might reconnect for other purposes, but shall not switch to any DATA IN phase or DATA OUT phases after a target reconnection. SCSI devices that implement this message shall also implement the CONTINUE TASK message.

This message shall be sent as the last message of the series of consecutive messages of an initial connection. In the case where the initiator initiates a SDTR and/or a WDTR the initiator shall assert ATN

during the last SDTR or WDTR negotiation within the same initial connection and send the target transfer disable message in response to the corresponding MESSAGE OUT phase. The target may continue the task, including any DATA OUT phases on the initial connection, until the target would normally disconnect, but the target shall not reconnect to transfer data. That is, the target shall not switch to a DATA IN phase on the initial connection and the target shall not switch to any DATA IN or DATA OUT phases on any subsequent target reconnection for the task.

Editors Note 8 - GOP: The above is from 96-268r0 (which was not voted on at a plenary but was agreed to at the 11/96 working group where the editor was instructed to make the change to SIP-2). The wording however The initiator shall not attempt to start a SDTR nor a WDTR negotiation in the same initial connection as a target transfer disable message is sent.' **is incorrect. The new corrected wording is underlined above.**

When the target is ready to transfer data for a disconnected task for which a TARGET TRANSFER DISABLE message has been sent, the target shall reconnect to the initiator for the task (via a RESELECTION phase and consecutive MESSAGE IN phases containing an IDENTIFY message, and an optional SIMPLE TASK message), send a DISCONNECT message, and, if the initiator does not respond with a MESSAGE REJECT message, switch to a BUS FREE phase. This connection serves to notify the initiator that the task is ready for data transfer. If the initiator rejects the DISCONNECT message, the target may switch to a DATA IN or DATA OUT phase; otherwise, the initiator may reconnect to the task as described in the CONTINUE TASK message to perform the data transfer.

Initiators should avoid sending the TARGET TRANSFER DISABLE message to targets that have not implemented this message. Such targets may not respond as described in this section. An application client can determine whether a SCSI device implements this message by examining the (TRANDIS) bit in the standard INQUIRY data (see SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard). The application client shall request the initiator use the CONTINE TASK message by issuing a TARGET TRANSFER DISABLE link control function in the send SCSI command phase.

11.5.2.14 TASK COMPLETE

The TASK COMPLETE message is sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that a task has completed and that valid status has been sent to the initiator. After successfully sending this message, the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase by releasing the BSY signal. The target shall consider the message transmission to be successful when it detects the negation of ACK for the TASK COMPLETE message with the ATN signal false.

The task may have completed successfully or unsuccessfully as indicated in the status.

11.5.2.15 WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST

WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (WDTR) messages (see table 54) are used to negotiate a wide data transfer agreement between two SCSI devices.

Table 54 - WIDE DATA TRANSFER message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	EXTENDED MESSAGE (01h)							
1	EXTENDED MESSAGE LENGTH (02h)							
2	WIDE DATA TRANSFER REQUEST (03h)							
3	TRANSFER WIDTH EXPONENT (m)							

The TRANSFER WIDTH EXPONENT field defines the transfer width to be used during DATA IN phases and DATE OUT phases. The transfer width that is established applies to all logical units on both SCSI devices. Valid transfer widths are 8 bits (m=00h), 16 bits (m=01h), and 32 bits (m=02h). Values of m greater than 02h are reserved.

A WDTR agreement applies to all logical units of the two SCSI devices that negotiated agreement. That is, if SCSI device A, acting as an initiator negotiates a wide data transfer agreement with SCSI device B (a target), then the same transfer width agreement applies to SCSI devices A and B even if SCSI device B changes to an initiator.

A wide data transfer agreement only applies to the two SCSI devices that negotiate the agreement. Separate wide transfer agreements are negotiated for each pair of SCSI devices. The wide data transfer agreement only applies to data phases.

A WDTR message exchange shall be initiated by an SCSI device whenever a previously arranged wide transfer agreement may have become invalid. The agreement becomes invalid after any condition which may leave the wide transfer agreement in an indeterminate state such as:

a) after a hard reset;
b) after a TARGET RESET message; and
c) after a power cycle;
d) after a change in the transceiver mode (e.g., LVD mode to SE mode).

In addition, an SCSI device may initiate a WDTR message exchange whenever it is appropriate to negotiate a new wide transfer agreement. SCSI devices that are capable of wide data transfers (greater than 8 bits) shall not respond to a WDTR message with a MESSAGE REJECT message.

Renegotiation after every selection is not recommended, since a significant performance impact is likely.

The WDTR message exchange establishes an agreement between the two SCSI devices on the width of the data path to be used for data phase transfers between two SCSI devices. This agreement only applies to DATA IN phases and DATA OUT phases. All other information transfer phases shall use an eight-bit data path.

If a SCSI device implements both wide data transfer option and synchronous data transfer option, then it shall negotiate the wide data transfer agreement prior to negotiating the synchronous data transfer agreement. If a synchronous data transfer agreement is in effect, then:

a) if a WDTR message is rejected with a MESSAGE REJECT message the prior synchronous data transfer agreement shall remain intact; or
b) if a WDTR message is not rejected with a MESSAGE REJECT message a WDTR message shall reset the synchronous data transfer agreement to asynchronous mode.

The originating SVSI device (the SCSI device that sends the first of the pair of WDTR messages) sets its transfer width value to the maximum data path width it elects to accommodate. If the responding SCSI device can also accommodate this transfer width, it returns the same value in its WDTR message. If it requires a smaller transfer width, it substitutes the smaller value in its WDTR message. The successful completion of an exchange of WDTR messages implies an agreement as shown in table 55.

Table 55 - WDTR messages implied agreements

Responding agent WDTR response	Implied agreement
Non-zero TRANSFER WIDTH EXPONENT	Wide transfer (i.e., the initiator and the target transmit data with a transfer width equal to the responding device's transfer width). If the initiating SCSI device does not support the responding SCSI device's TRANSFER WIDTH EXPONENT then the initiating SCSI device shall MESSAGE REJECT the WDTR message (see 11.5.2.15.1 and 11.5.2.15.2).
TRANSFER WIDTH equal to zero	Eight-bit data transfer
MESSAGE REJECT message	Eight-bit data transfer

The implied transfer width agreement shall remain in effect until a TARGET RESET message is received, until a hard reset occurs, or until one of the two SCSI devices elects to modify the agreement. The default data transfer width is eight-bit data transfer mode. The default data transfer width is entered at power on, after a TARGET RESET message, or after a hard reset.

11.5.2.15.1 Target initiated WDTR negotiation

If the target recognizes that WDTR negotiation is required, it sends a WDTR message to the initiator.

Prior to releasing the ACK signal on the last byte of the WDTR message from the target, the initiator shall assert the ATN signal and respond with its WDTR message or with a MESSAGE REJECT message.

If an abnormal condition prevents the initiator from responding with a WDTR message with a MESSAGE REJECT message then both SCSI devices shall go to eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices.

Following an initiator's responding WDTR message, an implied agreement for wide data transfers operation shall not be considered to exist until the target leaves the MESSAGE OUT phase, indicating that the target has accepted the negotiation.

After a vendor-specific number of retry attempts (greater than zero), if the target has not received the initiator's responding WDTR message, it shall switch to the BUS FREE phase without any further information transfer attempt (see 11.1.1). This indicates that a catastrophic error condition has occurred. Both SCSI devices shall use the eight-bit date transfer mode and asynchronous mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices.

If the target does not support the initiator's responding TRANSFER WIDTH EXPONENT the target shall switch to a MESSAGE IN phase and the first message shall be a MESSAGE REJECT message. In this case the implied agreement shall be considered to be negated and both SCSI devices shall use the eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices. Any prior synchronous data transfer agreement shall remain intact.

11.5.2.15.2 Initiator initiated WDTR negotiation

If the initiator recognizes that WDTR negotiation is required, it asserts the ATN signal and sends a WDTR message to begin the negotiating process. After successfully completing the MESSAGE OUT phase, the target shall respond with a WDTR message.

If an abnormal condition prevents the target from responding with a SDTR message or with a MESSGE REJECT message then both SCSI devices shall go to eight-bit transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices.

Following a target 's responding WDTR message, an implied agreement for wide data transfers shall not be considered to exist until;

a) the initiator receives the last byte of the WDTR message and parity is valid; and
b) the target does not detect an assertion of the ATN signal before the ACK signal is released on the last byte of the WDTR message.

If the initiator does not support the target's responding TRANSFER WIDTH EXPONENT the initiator shall assert ATN and the first message shall be a MESSAGE REJECT message.

If during the WDTR message the initiator asserts the ATN signal and the first message of the MESSAGE OUT phase is either a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR or MESSAGE REJECT message the wide data transfers shall be considered to be negated by both SCSI devices. In this case, both SCSI devices shall use the eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two devices.

For the MESSAGE PARITY ERROR case, the implied agreement shall be reinstated if a retransmission of the second of the pair of messages is successfully accomplished. After a vendor-specific number of retry attempts (greater than zero), if the target continues to receive MESSAGE PARITY ERROR messages, it shall terminate the retry activity. This may be done either by switching to any other information transfer phase and transferring at least one byte of information or by going to the BUS FREE phase (see 11.1.1). The initiator shall accept such action as aborting the WDTR negotiation, and both SCSI devices shall go to eight-bit data transfer mode for data transfers between the two SCSI devices. Any prior synchronous data transfer agreement shall remain intact

11.5.3 Task attribute messages

Two byte task attribute messages are used to specify an identifier, called a tag, for a task which establishes the I_T_L_Q nexus. The tag field is an 8-bit unsigned integer assigned by the application client and sent to the initiator in the send SCSI command phase. The tag for every task for each I_T_L nexus should be unique. If the task manager receives a tag that is currently in use for the I_T_L nexus, then it shall respond as defined in 11.6.2. A tag becomes available for reassignment when the task ends. The numeric value of a tag is arbitrary, providing there are no outstanding duplicates, and has no effect on the order of execution.

For each logical unit on each target, each application client has up to 256 tags to assign to tasks. Thus a target with eight logical units could have up to 14 336 tasks concurrently in existence if there were seven initiators on the bus.

Whenever an initiator connects to a target, the appropriate task attribute message shall be sent immediately following the IDENTIFY message to establish the I_T_L_Q nexus for the task. Only one I_T_L_Q nexus may be established during a connection. If a task attribute message is not sent, then only an I_T_L nexus is established for the task (i.e., an untagged command).

Whenever a target reconnects to an initiator to continue a tagged task, the SIMPLE QUEUE message shall be sent immediately following the IDENTIFY message to resume the I_T_L_Q nexus for the task. Only one I_T_L_Q nexus may occur during a reconnection. If the SIMPLE TAG message is not sent, then only an I_T_L nexus occurs for the task (i.e., an untagged command).

If a target attempts to reconnect using an invalid tag, then the initiator should assert the ATN signal. After the corresponding MESSAGE OUT phase the initiator shall respond with an ABORT TASK message.

If a target does not implement tagged queuing and a queue tag message is received the target shall switch to a MESSAGE IN phase with a MESSAGE REJECT message and accept the task as if it were untagged provided there are no outstanding untagged tasks from that initiator.

See SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard for the task set management rules.

Table 56 - Task attribute message codes

Code	Support		Message Name	Direction		Negate ATN before last ACK
	Initiator	Target				
24h	O	O	ACA		Out	Not required
21h	Q	Q	HEAD OF QUEUE		Out	Not required
0Ah	O	O	LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE	In		n/a
0Bh	O	O	LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (WITH FLAG)	In		n/a
22h	Q	Q	ORDERED		Out	Not required
20h	Q	Q	SIMPLE	In	Out	Not required

Key: M=Mandatory support, O=Optional support, Q=Mandatory if tagged queuing is implemented
In=Target to initiator, Out=Initiator to target
Yes=Initiator shall negate ATN before last ACK of message.
Not required=Initiator may or may not negate ATN before last ACK of message (see 11.2.1).
n/a=Not applicable
***=Extended message

11.5.3.1 ACA

See table 57 for the format of the ACA message.

Table 57 - ACA message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	MESSAGE CODE (24h)							
1	TAG (00h-FFh)							

The ACA message specifies that the task shall be placed in the task set as an ACA task. The rules used by the task manager to handle ACA tasks within a task set are defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

11.5.3.2 HEAD OF QUEUE

See table 58 for the format of the HEAD OF QUEUE message.

Table 58 - HEAD OF QUEUE message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	MESSAGE CODE (21h)							
1	TAG (00h-FFh)							

The HEAD OF QUEUE message specifies that the task shall be placed in the task set as a HEAD OF QUEUE task. The rules used by the device server to handle HEAD OF QUEUE tasks within a task set are defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

11.5.3.3 LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE

The LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE message is sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that a linked command has completed and that status has been sent. The initiator shall then set the pointers to the initial state for the next linked command.

11.5.3.4 LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (WITH FLAG)

The LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (WITH FLAG) message is sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that a linked command (with the flag bit set to one) has completed and that status has been sent. The initiator shall then set the pointers to the initial state of the next linked command. Typically this message would be used to cause an interrupt in the application client between two linked commands.

11.5.3.5 ORDERED

See table 59 for the format of the ORDERED message.

Table 59 - ORDERED message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	MESSAGE CODE (22h)							
1	TAG (00h-FFh)							

The ORDERED message specifies that the task shall be placed in the task set as an ORDERED task. The rules used by the task manager to handle ORDERED tasks within a task set are defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

11.5.3.6 SIMPLE

See table 60 for the format of the SIMPLE message.

Table 60 - SIMPLE message format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	MESSAGE CODE (20h)							
1	TAG (00h-FFh)							

The SIMPLE message specifies that the task shall be placed in the task set as a SIMPLE task. The rules used by the task manager to handle SIMPLE tasks within a task set are defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

11.5.4 Task management messages

Table 61 - Task management message codes

Code	Support		Message Name	Direction		Negate ATN before last ACK
	Initiator	Target				
0Dh	Q	Q	ABORT TASK		Out	Yes
06h	O	M	ABORT TASK SET		Out	Yes
16h	O	O	CLEAR ACA		Out	Not required
0Eh	Q	Q	CLEAR TASK SET		Out	Yes
17h	O	O	LOGICAL UNIT RESET (Note)		Out	Yes
0Ch	O	M	TARGET RESET		Out	Yes
11h	O	O	TERMINATE TASK		Out	Yes

Key: M=Mandatory support, O=Optional support, Q=Mandatory if tagged queuing is implemented
In=Target to initiator, Out=Initiator to target
Yes=Initiator shall negate ATN before last ACK of message.
Not required=Initiator may or may not negate ATN before last ACK of message (see 11.2.1).
n/a=Not applicable
***=Extended message

Note-The LOGICAL UNIT RESET message is mandatory if hierarchical addressing (see SCSI Controller Command Standard) is implemented by the target.

11.5.4.1 ABORT TASK

The ABORT TASK message is defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

In addition to the requirements in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase following the successful receipt of the ABORT TASK message.

If the ABORT TASK message is received by the target as one of the messages in a MESSAGE OUT phase following a RESELECTION phase, the ABORT TASK message aborts the current task.

If only an I_T nexus has been established, the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase. No status or

message shall be sent for the current task and no other task shall be affected.

NOTE 37 - The ABORT TASK message in the case of only an I_T nexus is useful to an initiator that cannot get an IDENTIFY message through to the target due to parity errors and just needs to end the current task. Any pending data, status, or tasks for the I_T nexus are not affected. It is not possible to abort an I_T nexus on a reconnection because of item f) in 11.2.1.

It is not an error to issue this message to an I_T_x nexus that does not have any pending tasks.

11.5.4.2 ABORT TASK SET

The ABORT TASK SET message is defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

In addition to the requirements in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase following the successful receipt of the ABORT TASK SET message.

If only an I_T nexus has been established, the target shall switch to a BUS FREE phase. No status or message shall be sent for the current task and no other task shall be affected.

The ABORT TASK SET message in the case of only an I_T nexus is useful to an initiator that cannot get an IDENTIFY message through to the target due to parity errors and just needs to end the current connection. No pending data, status, or tasks are affected.

It is not an error to issue this message to an I_T_L nexus that does not have any pending or current tasks.

On a reconnection, the ABORT TASK message aborts the current task if it is fully identified. If the current task is not fully identified (i.e. an I_T_L nexus exists, but the target is reconnecting for an I_T_L_Q nexus), then the current task is not aborted and the target goes to the BUS FREE phase.

NOTE 38 - A nexus is not fully identified on a reconnection if the ATN signal is asserted during or prior to the IDENTIFY message and the target only has tagged tasks for that initiator on that logical unit.

11.5.4.3 CLEAR ACA

The CLEAR ACA message is defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

On receipt of a CLEAR ACA message the task manager, in addition to clearing the ACA condition, shall continue processing the current task.

It is not an error to issue a CLEAR ACA message when no ACA condition is in effect.

11.5.4.4 CLEAR TASK SET

The CLEAR TASK SET message is defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

In addition to the requirements in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase following the successful receipt of the CLEAR TASK SET message.

11.5.4.5 LOGICAL UNIT RESET

The LOGICAL UNIT RESET message is defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

If only an I_T nexus has been established the LOGICAL UNIT RESET shall be performed as if it was a TARGET RESET.

In addition to the requirements in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard the target shall go to the BUS FREE phase following the successful receipt of the LOGICAL UNIT RESET message.

Editors Note 9 - GOP: Is the underlined text the correct response? This was not clear in SIP.

11.5.4.6 TARGET RESET

The TARGET RESET message is defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

In addition to the requirements in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard the target, following the successful receipt of the TARGET RESET message:

a) shall go to the BUS FREE phase, and
b) shall not change any SCSI IDs.

11.5.4.7 TERMINATE TASK

The TERMINATE TASK message is defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

If the task manager does not support this message or is unable to stop the current task, it shall send a MESSAGE REJECT message to the initiator and continue the task in a normal manner.

11.6 Command processing considerations and exception conditions

The following subclauses describe some aspects of command processing, including exception conditions and error handling which are specific to the SCSI Parallel Interface-2 Standard.

11.6.1 Asynchronous event notification

Notification of an asynchronous event is performed using the SEND command with the AER bit set to one. The information identifying the condition being reported shall be returned during the data out delivery phase of the SEND command (see SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard).

An error condition or unit attention condition shall be reported once per occurrence of the event causing it. The target may choose to use an asynchronous event notification or to return CHECK CONDITION status on a subsequent command, but not both. Notification of command-related error conditions shall be sent only to the initiator that requested the task.

The asynchronous event notification protocol can be used to notify processor devices that a system resource has become available. If a target chooses to use this method, the sense key in the sense data sent to the processor device shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION.

The asynchronous event notification protocol shall be used only with SCSI devices that return processor device type with an AERC bit of one in response to an INQUIRY command. The INQUIRY command should be sent to logical unit zero of each SCSI device responding to selection. This procedure shall be conducted prior to the first asynchronous event notification and shall be repeated whenever the device deems it appropriate or when an event occurs that may invalidate the current information. (See SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST message (11.5.2.12) for examples of these events.)

Each SCSI device that returns processor device type with an AERC bit of one shall be issued a TEST UNIT READY command to determine that the SCSI device is ready to receive an asynchronous event notification. A SCSI device returning CHECK CONDITION status is issued a REQUEST SENSE command. This clears any pending unit attention condition. A SCSI device that returns processor device type with an AERC bit of one and returns GOOD status when issued a TEST UNIT READY command shall accept a SEND command with an AER bit of one.

NOTE 39 - A SCSI device which can use asynchronous event notification at initialization time should provide means to defeat these notifications. This can be done with a switch or jumper wire. Devices which implement saved parameters may alternatively save the asynchronous event notification permissions either on a per SCSI device basis or as a system wide option. In any case, a device conducts a survey with INQUIRY commands to be sure that the devices on the SCSI bus are appropriate destinations for SEND commands with an AER bit of one. (The devices on the bus or the SCSI ID assignments may have changed.)

See asynchronous event reporting in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard for more information on asynchronous event notification.

11.6.2 Incorrect initiator connection

An incorrect initiator connection occurs on a reconnection if an initiator attempts to reconnect to a task, and then the initiator does not send an ABORT TASK SET, ABORT TASK, TARGET RESET, CLEAR TASK SET, CONTINUE TASK, or TERMINATE TASK message as one of the messages within the MESSAGE OUT phase after the IDENTIFY message.

A task manager that detects an incorrect initiator connection shall abort all tasks for the initiator and the associated logical unit and shall return CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ABORTED COMMAND and the additional sense code shall be set to TAGGED OVERLAPPED COMMANDS with the additional sense code qualifier set to the value of the duplicate tag.

NOTE 40 - An incorrect initiator connection may be indicative of a serious error and, if not detected, could result in a task operating with a wrong set of pointers. This is considered a catastrophic failure on the part of the initiator. Therefore, vendor-specific error recovery procedures may be required to guarantee the data integrity on the medium. The target may return additional sense data to aid in this error recovery procedure (e.g., sequential-access devices may return the residue of blocks remaining to be written or read at the time the second command was received).

NOTE 41 - Some targets may not detect an incorrect initiator connection until after the command descriptor block has been received.

See the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard for more information on overlapped commands.

11.6.3 Unexpected reselection

An unexpected reselection occurs of a target attempts to reconnect to a task for which a nexus does not exist. An initiator should respond to an unexpected reselection by sending an ABORT TASK message.

11.7 Use of disconnect-reconnect page parameters

The disconnect-reconnect page (see SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard) provides the application client the means to tune the performance of the SCSI parallel interface. The following subclause defines the fields in the disconnect-reconnect mode page of the MODE SENSE or MODE SELECT command that are used by targets.

The application client passes the fields used to control the SCSI parallel interface to a device server by means of a MODE SELECT command. The device server then communicates the field values to the target. The field values are communicated from the device server to the target in a vendor specific manor.

SCSI-3 interlaced protocol devices shall only use disconnect-reconnect page parameter fields defined below. If any other fields within the disconnect-reconnect page of the MODE SELECT command contain a non-zero value, the device server shall return CHECK CONDITION status for that MODE SELECT command. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code set to ILLEGAL FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

The BUFFER FULL RATIO field and BUFFER EMPTY RATIO FIELD are used as described in the SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard.

The BUS INACTIVITY LIMIT field indicates the maximum time in 100 µs increments that the target is permitted to assert the BSY signal without a REQ/ACK handshake. If the bus inactivity limit is exceeded the target shall attempt to disconnect (see 11.5.2.2) if the initiator has granted the disconnect privilege (see 11.5.2.3) and it is not restricted by DTDC. This value may be rounded as defined in the SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard. A value of zero indicates that there is no bus inactivity limit.

The DISCONNECT TIME LIMIT field indicates the minimum time in 100 µs increments that the target shall wait after releasing the SCSI bus before attempting reselection. This value may be rounded as defined in the SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard. A value of zero indicates that there is no disconnect time limit.

The CONNECT TIME LIMIT field indicates the maximum time in 100 µs increments that the target is allowed to use the SCSI bus before disconnecting, if the initiator has granted the disconnect privilege (see 11.5.2.3) and it is not restricted by DTDC. This value may be rounded as defined in the SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard. A value of zero indicates that there is no connect time limit.

The MAXIMUM BURST SIZE field indicates the maximum amount of data that the target shall transfer during a data phase before disconnecting if the initiator has granted the disconnect privilege (see 11.5.2.3). This value is expressed in increments of 512 bytes (e.g. a value of one means 512 bytes, two means 1024 bytes, etc.). A value of zero indicates there is no limit on the amount of data transferred per connection.

The enable modify data pointers (EMDP) bit indicates whether or not the initiator allows the MODIFY DATA POINTERS message to be issued by the target. If the EMDP bit is a zero, the target shall not issue the MODIFY DATA POINTERS message. If the EMDP bit is a one, the target is allowed to issue MODIFY DATA POINTERS messages.

If the EMDP bit is a one and the initiator responds to a MODIFY DATA POINTER message with a MESSAGE REJECT, then the target shall return a CHECK CONDITION. The sense key shall be set to ABORTED COMMAND and the sense code shall be set to INVALID MESSAGE ERROR.

A disconnect immediate (DIMM) bit of zero indicates that the target may request DATA IN or DATA OUT phases following a COMMAND phase without attempting a disconnect (see 11.5.2.2). A DIMM bit of one indicates that the target shall attempt a disconnect (see 11.5.2.2) after a COMMAND phase and before a subsequent DATA IN or DATA OUT phase. The DIMM bit only applies when the initiator has granted the disconnect privilege (see 11.5.2.3).

The DATA TRANSFER DISCONNECT CONTROL (DTDC) field (see table 62) defines further restrictions on when a disconnect is permitted.

TABLE 62 - DATA TRANSFER DISCONNECT CONTROL

DTDC	Description
000b	DATA TRANSFER DISCONNECT CONTROL is not used. Disconnect is controlled by the other fields in this page.
001b	A target shall not attempt to disconnect once the data transfer of a command has started until all data the command is to transfer has been transferred. The connect time limit and bus inactivity limit are ignored during the data transfer.
010b	Reserved
011b	A target shall not attempt to disconnect once the data transfer of a command has started, until the command is complete. The connect time limit and bus inactivity limit are ignored once data transfer has started.
100b-111b	Reserved

If DTDC is non-zero and the maximum burst size is non-zero, the target shall return a CHECK CONDITION status. The sense key shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and the additional sense code set to ILLEGAL FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

11.8 SCSI parallel interface services

SCSI parallel interface services are provided by the initiator enabling the application client to accomplish tasks and task management functions (see SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard) and by the target enabling the device server to receive commands and move data to/from an application client. The SCSI parallel interface services are described in terms of the services the initiator and target provide. Each SCSI parallel interface service causes a sequence phases to be generated by the addressed SCSI devices. figure 52 shows all the valid phase sequences.

11.8.0.1 Procedure terms

See table 63 for the mapping of the procedure terms used in the this standard to the equivalent procedure terms used in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard.

Table 63 - SCSI Parallel Interface-2 Standard terms mapped to terms from other SCSI-3 standards

SCSI Parallel Interface-2 Standard terms	Equivalent SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard terms
initiator SCSI ID	initiator identifier
target SCSI ID	target identifier
initiator SCSI ID+target SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag]	task identifier
target SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag]	task address
target SCSI ID **or** target SCSI ID+logical unit number **or** initiator SCSI ID+target SCSI ID+logical unit number+tag	object identifier
target SCSI ID **or** target SCSI ID+logical unit number **or** target SCSI ID+logical unit number+tag	object address
target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID	none

See table 64 for a list of the procedure terms used when passing services across the SCSI parallel interface service interface. See table 64 for the definitions of the SCSI Parallel Interface-2 Standard names and the equivalent SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard names of the procedure terms, the name of the standard where the terms are defined, the standard where the binary contents of the terms are defined, and the routing of the terms

.

Table 64 - Procedure terms

SCSI Parallel Interface-2 Standard terms	Standard where term defined	Standard where binary contents of term defined	Term routing
application client buffer offset	SAM	SAM	DS ➔ targ ➔ init
command byte count	SAM	SAM	AC ➔ init
command descriptor block	SAM	SAM/cmd (note 2)	AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ DS
data-in buffer	SAM	cmd (note 3)	DS ➔ targ ➔ init ➔ AC
data-out buffer	SAM	cmd (note 3)	AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ DS
device server buffer	SAM	cmd (note 3)	DS ➔ targ ➔ init
initiator SCSI ID	SAM	this standard	DS ➔ targ **or** TM ➔ targ
link control function	this standard	this standard	AC ➔ init ➔ targ
logical unit number	SAM	this standard	AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ DS **or** AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ TM **or** DS ➔ targ ➔ init
request byte count	SAM	SAM	DS ➔ targ
service response	SAM	this standard (note 4)	DS ➔ targ ➔ init ➔ AC **or** targ ➔ DS
service response (note 1)	SAM	this standard (note 4)	init ➔ AC
status	SAM	SAM	DS ➔ targ ➔ init ➔ AC
tag	SAM	this standard	AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ DS **or** AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ TM **or** DS ➔ targ ➔ init
target SCSI ID	SAM	this standard	AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ DS **or** AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ TM **or** DS ➔ targ
target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID	this standard	this standard	targ ➔ DS **or** targ ➔ TM
task attribute	SAM	this standard	AC ➔ init ➔ targ ➔ DS

Key: AC=application client, cmd=SCSI command standards, DS=device server, init=initiator, SAM=SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard, TM=task manager, targ=target

Notes

1) Only occurs when unexpected bus free (see 11.1.1.1) is detected by the initiator.

2) The portions not defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard are defined in the SCSI command standards (e.g.,SCSI-3 Block Commands Standard, SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard).

3) Parameter lists are defined within one of the SCSI command standards (e.g.,SCSI-3 Block Commands Standard, SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard). SCSI standards do not define non-parameter list information.

4) The SERVICE DELIVERY OR TARGET FAILURE value of the service response is not defined in SCSI-3.

11.8.1 Application client SCSI command services

The SCSI command services shall be requested by the application client using a procedure call defined as:

Service response = execute command (target SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag], command descriptor block, [task attribute], [link control function], [data-out buffer], [command byte count] || [data-in buffer], status, service response).

11.8.1.1 Send SCSI command service

The send SCSI command service is a four step confirmed service that provides the means to transfer a command data block to a device server.

Processing the execute command procedure call for a send SCSI command service shall be composed of the 4 step confirmed service shown in table 65.

Table 65 - Processing of send SCSI command service procedure

Step	Protocol service name	SCSI Interlocked Protocol Service Interface procedure call
request	send SCSI command request	send SCSI command (target SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag], command descriptor block, [task attribute], [link control function], [data-out buffer], [command byte count] ||).
indication	send SCSI command indication	SCSI command received (target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag], [command descriptor block], [task attribute], ||).
response	send SCSI command response	send command complete (target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag], [status], [service response], ||).
confirmation	send SCSI command confirmation	command complete received (target SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag], [data-in buffer], [status], service response ||).

11.8.2 Device server SCSI command services

The SCSI data buffer movement services shall be requested from the device server using a procedure call defined as:

Service response = move data buffer (target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID+logical unit number [+tag], device server buffer, application client buffer offset, request byte count ||).

Only one type of data buffer movement procedure call shall be used while processing one command, either data-in delivery or data-out delivery.

11.8.2.1 Data-in delivery service

The data-in delivery service is a two step confirmed service that provides the means to transfer a parameter list or data from a device server to an initiator.

Processing the execute command procedure call for a data-in delivery service shall be composed of the 2

step confirmed service shown in table 66

Table 66 - Processing of data-in delivery service procedure

Step	Protocol service name	SCSI Interlocked Protocol Service Interface procedure call
request	data-in delivery request	send data-in (target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag], device server buffer, application client buffer offset, request byte count **||**).
confirmation	data-in delivery confirmation	data delivered (target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag], service response **||**).

11.8.2.2 Data-out delivery service

The data-out delivery service is a two step confirmed service that provides the means to transfer a parameter list or data from an initiator to a device server.

Processing the execute command procedure call for a data-out delivery service shall be composed of the 2 step confirmed service shown in table 67..

Table 67 - Processing of data-out delivery service procedure

Step	Protocol service name	SCSI Interlocked Protocol Service Interface procedure call
request	data-out delivery request	receive data-out (target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID+logical unit number[+tag], application client buffer offset, request byte count, device server buffer **||**).
confirmation	data-out delivery confirmation	data-out received (target SCSI ID+initator SCSI ID+logical unit number [+tag] service response **||**)

11.8.3 Task management services

The task management services shall be requested from the application client using a procedure call defined as:

Service response = task management function (target SCSI ID**|**target SCSI ID+logical unit number**|**target SCSI ID+logical unit number+tag, service delivery failure flag **||** service response).

11.8.3.1 Task management function service

This standard handles task management functions as a four step confirmed service that provides the means to transfer task management functions to a task manager.

The task management functions are defined in the SCSI-3 Architecture Model Standard. This standard defines the actions taken by the SCSI parallel interface service to carry out the requested task management functions.

11.8.3.1.1 ABORT TASK

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue an ABORT TASK message (see 11.5.4.1) to the selected SCSI device.

11.8.3.1.2 ABORT TASK SET

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue an ABORT TASK SET message (see 11.5.4.2) to the selected SCSI device.

11.8.3.1.3 CLEAR ACA

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue a CLEAR ACA message (see 11.5.4.3) to the selected SCSI device.

11.8.3.1.4 CLEAR TASK SET

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue a CLEAR TASK SET message (see 11.5.4.4) to the selected SCSI device.

11.8.3.1.5 LOGICAL UNIT RESET

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue a LOGICAL UNIT REST message (see 11.5.4.5) to the selected SCSI device.

11.8.3.1.6 RESET SERVICE DELIVERY SUBSYSTEM

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue a hard reset (see 11.2.2) to the selected SCSI device.

11.8.3.1.7 TARGET RESET

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue a TARGET RESET message (see 11.5.4.6) to the selected SCSI device.

11.8.3.1.8 TERMINATE TASK

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue a TERMINATE TASK message (see 11.5.4.7) to the selected SCSI device.

11.8.3.1.9 WAKEUP

The SCSI parallel interface services request the initiator issue a hard reset (see 11.2.2) to the selected SCSI device.

Annex A

(normative)

Additional requirements for LVD SCSI drivers and receivers

Editors Note 10 - GOP: The question is What does annex A apply to? or What is Annex A? The answer to these questions should cause the annex A to have a different more descriptive name.

A.1 System level requirements

The requirements for LVD drivers and receivers in this annex are based on the system level requirements stated in table A.1. Some of these requirements are specifically called out in other sections while others are derived from bus loading conditions and agreed trade-offs between competing parameters.

Table A.1 - System level requirements

Parameter	Minimum	Maximum	Cross-reference
V_A (mV)	-115		note 1
V_N (mV)		115	note 1
differential receiver input (mV)	$-V_N * 0,25$	$-V_A * 0,25$	figure 45
attenuation (%)		15	note 2
loaded media impedance (ohms)	85	135	note 3
unloaded media impedance (ohms)	110	135	subclause 6.1
terminator bias (mV)	100	125	subclause 7.2.1
terminator impedance (ohms)	100	110	subclause 7.2.1
device leakage (μA)	-20	20	table 22
number of devices	2	16	subclause 4.1.6
ground offset level (mV)	-355	355	note 4

Note:
1 -These limits allow 60 mV base A.C. level and a maximum 55 mV for crosstalk and other non-common mode noise.
2 -Measured from the driver to the farthest receiver.
3 -Caused by the addition of device capacitive load (see annex F for calculations).
4 -This is the difference in voltage signal commons for devices on the bus (see figure 2).

A.2 Driver requirements

The fundamental requirement for a LVD driver is the generation of a first-step differential output voltage magnitude at the driver connections to the balanced media to achieve required minimum differential signals at every receiver connection to the bus. Other characteristics that affect overall noise margin are the common-mode output voltage, the maximum differential output voltage, the driver output impedance, and the output signal wave shape.

The driver requirements are defined in terms of the voltages and currents defined in figure 41.

A.2.1 Differential output voltage, V_S

To assure sufficient voltage to define a valid logic state at any device connection on a fully loaded LVD bus a minimum differential output voltage must be generated. This value must be large enough that, after allowance for attenuation, reflections, and differential noise coupling, V_S is at least $\pm$60 mV at the device connector to the LVD bus.

There must also be upper limits to the differential output voltages and to the symmetry of the differential output voltage magnitudes between logic states to define the maximum voltage that can be attained and assure a first-step transition to the opposite logic state.

With the test circuit of figure A.1 and the test conditions V1 and V2 in table A.2 applied, the steady-state magnitude of the differential output voltage, V_S, for an asserted state (V_A), shall be greater than or equal to 270 mV and less than or equal to 780 mV. For the negated state, the polarity of V_S shall be reversed (V_N) and the differential voltage magnitude shall be greater than or equal to 260 mV and less than or equal to 640 mV. The relationship between V_A and V_N specified in table A.2 and shown graphically in figure A.2 shall be maintained.

Table A.2 - Driver steady-state test limits and conditions

Test parameter	Test conditions (figure A.1)	Minimum (mV)	Maximum (mV)
$\|V_A\|$ Differential output voltage magnitude (asserted)	V_1 = 0,957 V V_2 = 0,535 V	270	780
	V_1 = 1,949 V V_2 = 1,527V	270	780
$\|V_N\|$ Differential output voltage magnitude (negated)	V_1 = 0,957 V V_2 = 0,535 V	260	640
	V_1 = 1,949 V V_2 = 1,527V	260	640
$\|V_A\|$ Differential output voltage magnitude (asserted)	All four above conditions	0,69 * $\|V_N\|$ + 50	1,45 * $\|V_N\|$ - 65

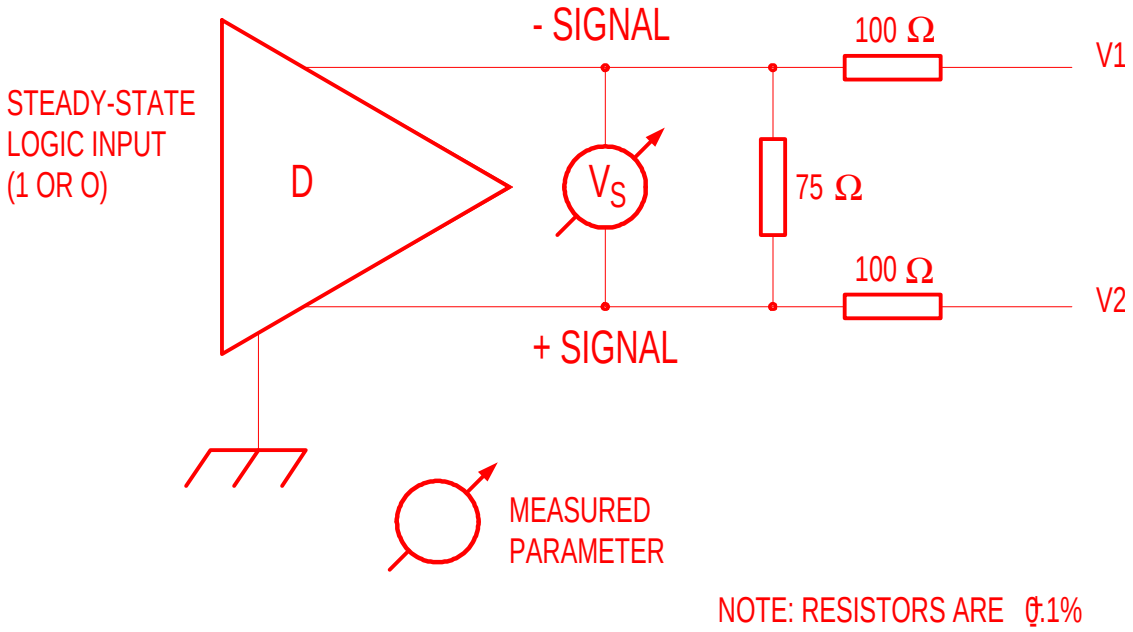


Figure A.1 - Differential steady-state output voltage test circuit

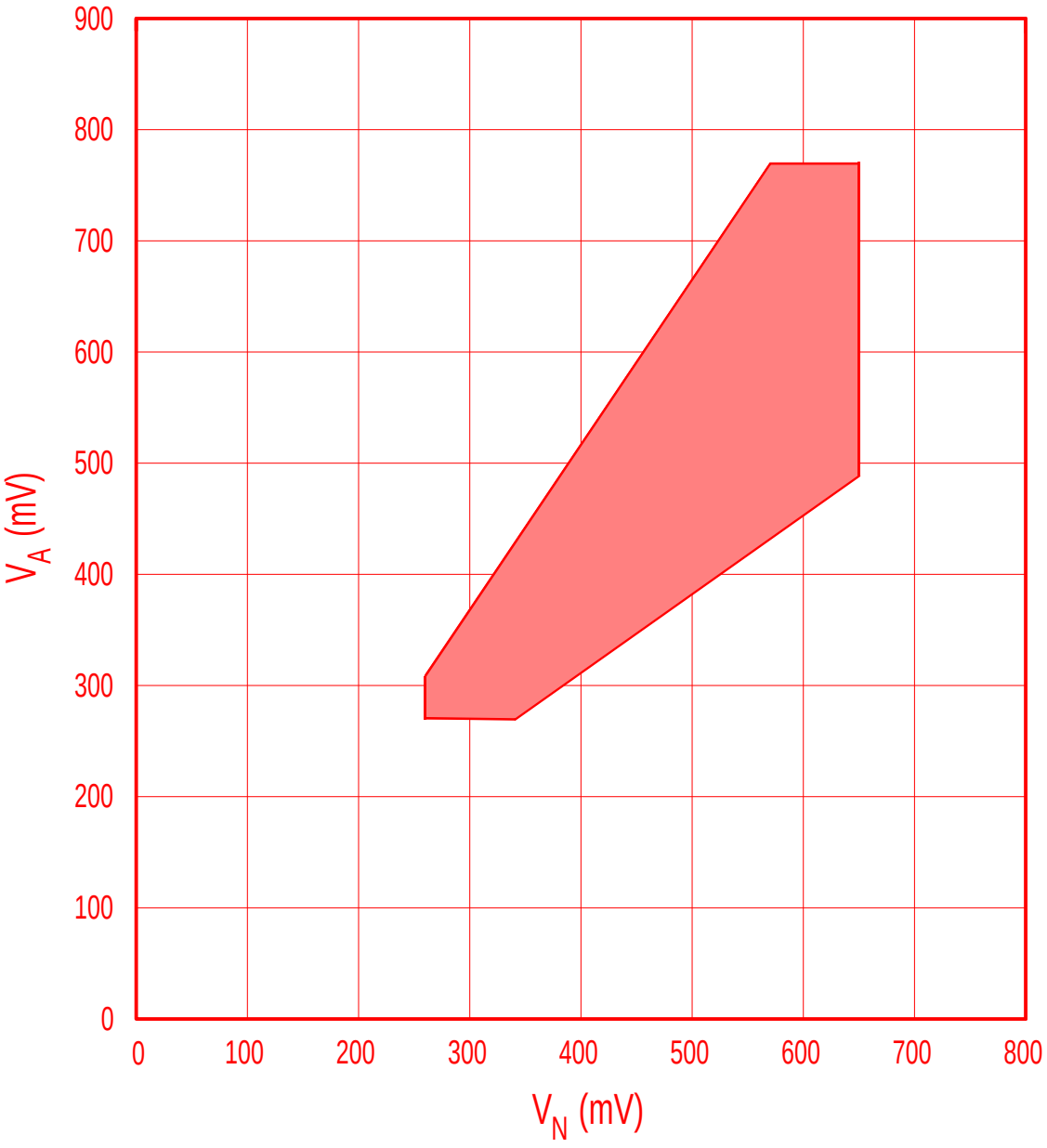


Figure A.2 - Domain for driver assertion and negation levels

Because the applied V1 and V2 simulates the effects of the bus termination bias, the assertion drivers and negation drivers must have different strengths to achieve the near equality in V_A and V_N shown in figure A.2. This test is therefore a requirement for asymmetrical drivers.

A.2.2 Offset (common-mode output) voltage, V_{CM}

The steady-state magnitude of the driver offset voltage (V_{CM}), measured with the test load of figure A.3 shall be greater than or equal to 0,700 V and less than or equal to 1,800 V for either binary state. The steady-state magnitude of the difference of V_{CM} for one logical state and for the opposite logical state, $\Delta V_{CM,}$ shall be 120 mV or less for all $V_{applied}$ in the range: 0,700 ≤ $V_{applied}$ ≤ 1,800. This requirement is shown graphically in figure A.4.

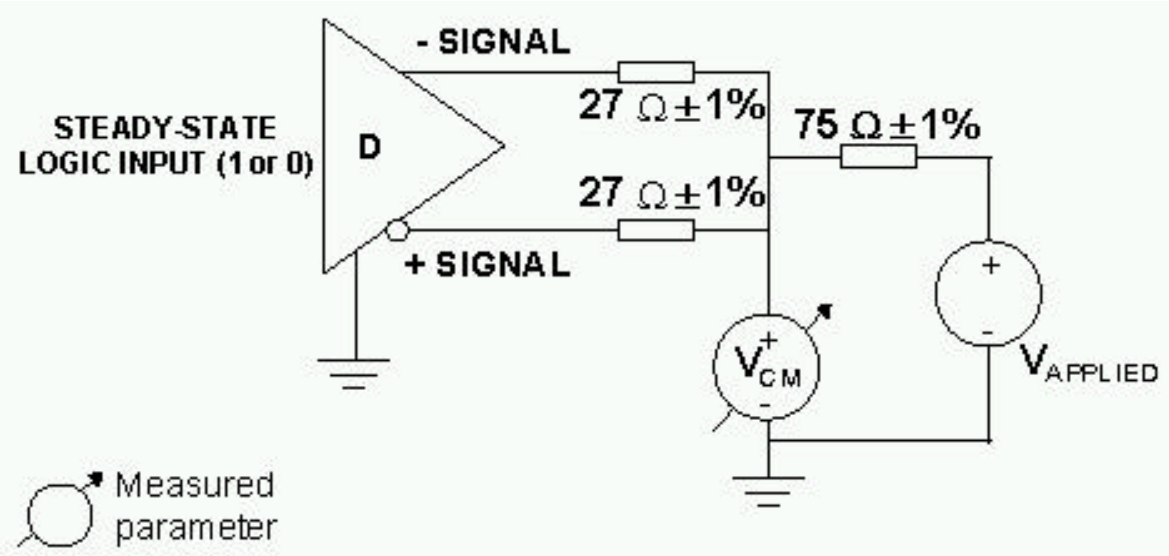


Figure A.3 - Driver offset steady-state voltage test circuit

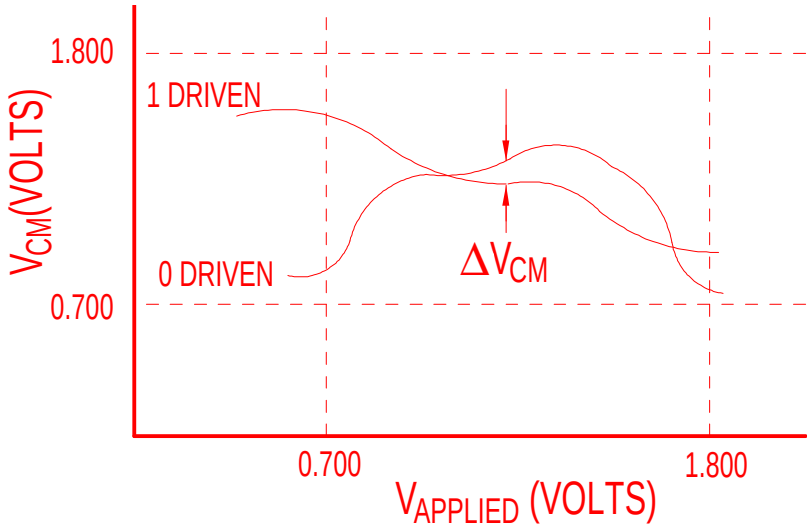


Figure A.4 - Common mode output voltage test

A.2.3 Short-circuit currents, I_{O-S} and I_{O+S}

Since an LVD bus allows multiple drivers, the possibility of contention requires a restriction on the power that may be sourced to the bus by a device. This is accomplished with a maximum allowable current from the driver.

With the driver output terminals short-circuited to a variable voltage source, the magnitudes of the currents (I_{O-S} and I_{O+S}) shall not exceed 24 mA for either logical state over the range $0 \leq V_{applied} \leq 2.5$ V. (see figure A.5).

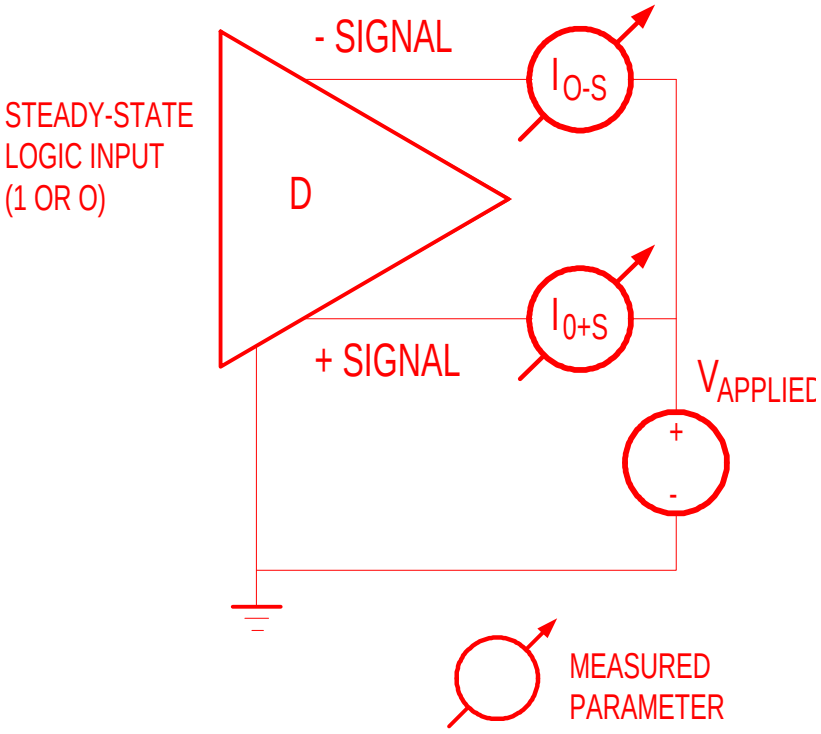


Figure A.5 - Driver short-circuit test circuit

A.2.4 Open-circuit output voltages, VO-(OC) and VO+(OC)

To limit the maximum steady-state voltage at any device connector, the driver output voltage must be restricted. The highest output voltage occurs with no output current.

The voltage between each output terminal of the driver circuit and its common shall be between 0 V and 3,6 V when measured in accordance with figure A.6. This requirement shall be met in all logical or high impedance states (0 V ≤ $V_{O-(OC)}$ ≤ 3,6V and 0 V ≤ $V_{O+(OC)}$ ≤ 3,6 V).

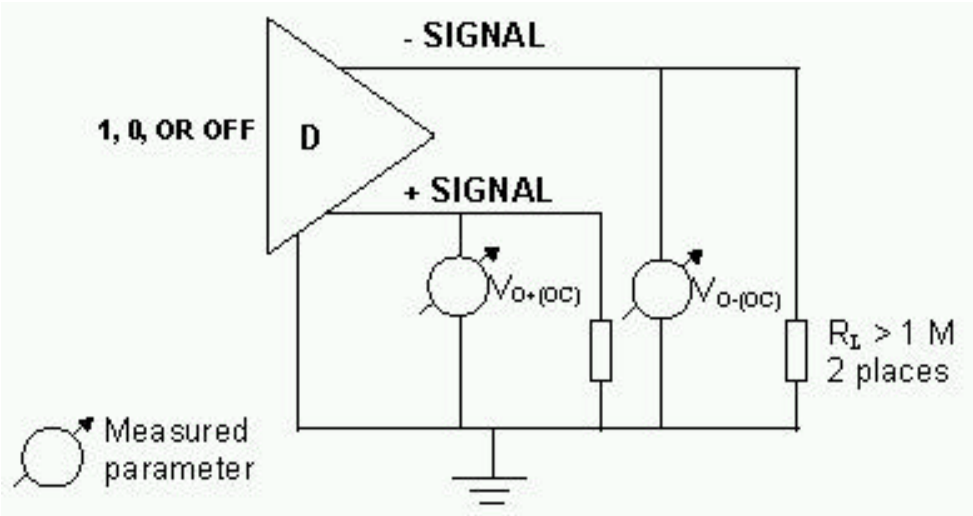


Figure A.6 - Open-circuit output voltage test circuit

A.2.5 Output signal waveform

The differential output rise or fall time of a driver is specified since they influence the timing measurements and stub lengths of an LVD interface. Excessive over and under shoot of the output signal can cause electromagnetic emissions or false logic state changes.

During transitions of the driver output between alternating logical states (one - zero, zero - one, one - off, off - one, zero - off, off - zero), the differential voltage measured with the test circuit of figure A.7 and table A.3, shall be such that the voltage monotonically changes between 0,2 and 0,8 of the steady-state output, V_{SS}. V_{SS} is defined as the voltage difference between the two steady-state values of the driver output ($V_{SS} = |V_A| + |V_N|$). (See figure A.8). V_{SS} is expected to be different for different transitions.

The output signal rise or fall times between 0,2 and 0,8 of V_{SS} shall be greater than or equal to 1 ns.

Measurement equipment used for compliance testing shall provide a bandwidth of 2 GHz minimum.

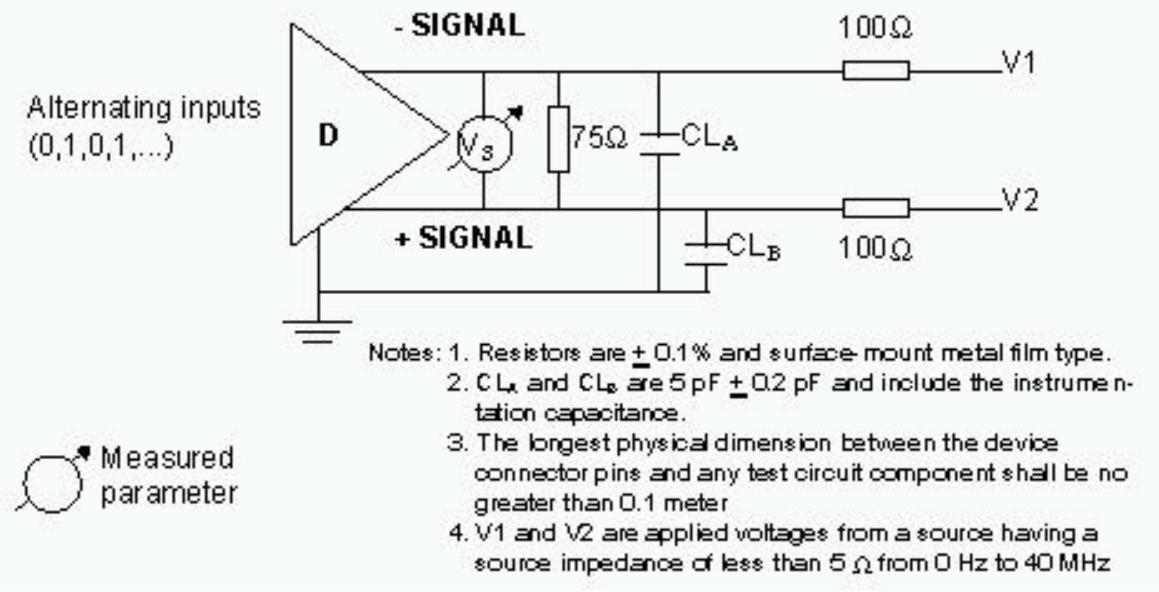


Figure A.7 - Differential output switching voltage test circuit

Table A.3 - Driver switching test circuit parameters

Test condition (see figure A.7)	V1	V2
Low common-mode voltage	1,375 V	0,807 V
High common-mode voltage	1,693 V	1,125 V

The signal voltage shall comply with the requirements shown in figure A.8.

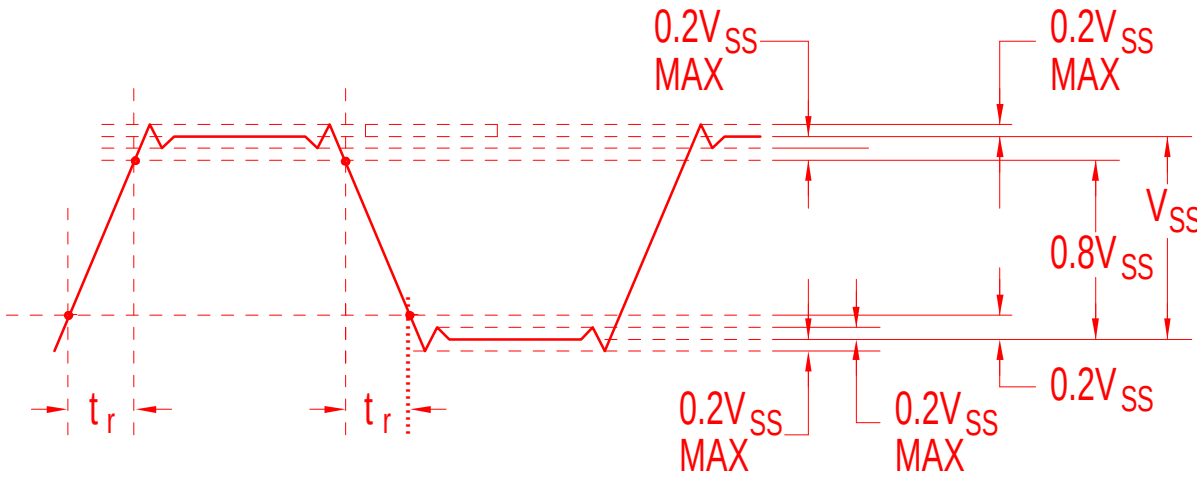


Figure A.8 - Driver output signal waveform

A.2.6 Dynamic output signal balance, $V_{CM(PP)}$

A mismatch in the magnitude of rate at which the voltage changes at the - signal and + signal connector pins, results in a common-mode ac signal. This may cause electromagnetic emissions from the media, excursions outside the receivers' common-mode input voltage range, and/or differential noise.

During transitions of the driver output between any state transition of high-to-low, low-to-high, high-to-off, off-to-high, low-to-off, or off-to-low, the voltage (V_{CM}) measured with the test circuit shown in figure A.9, shall not vary more than specified in table A.4 as $V_{applied}$ is varied over the range $0{,}700 \leq V_{applied} \leq 1{,}800$. Measurement equipment used for compliance testing shall provide a bandwidth of 400 MHz minimum. The requirements in this section apply only to the signals that implement the state transition type.

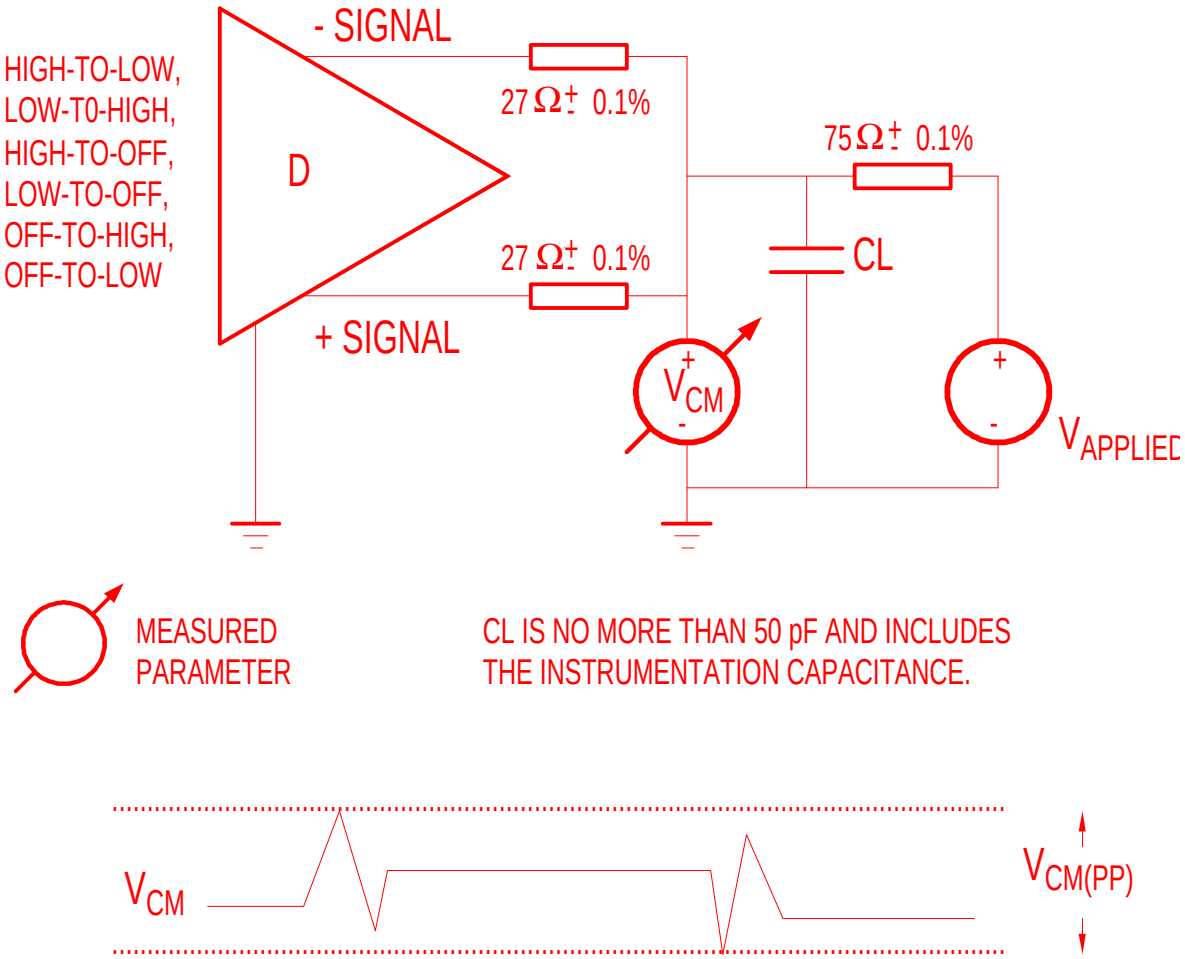


Figure A.9 - Driver offset switching voltage test circuit

Lower values of $V_{CM(PP)}$ have lower EMI risk.

Table A.4 - Dynamic output balance limits

Transition	$V_{CM(PP)}$ mV max
high-low	120
low-high	120
high-off	400
low-off	400
off-high	400
off-low	400

A.3 Receiver characteristics

A receiver indicates the logical state of the LVD bus as defined by the differential voltage that exists at the device connector. A minimum steady state differential voltage defines the logic state. The receiver shall detect this difference over the allowable common-mode input voltage range as determined by the driver and terminator output offsets and ground difference voltages.

Table A.5 defines the voltages and currents used for the requirements in this section.

A.3.1 Receiver steady state input voltage requirements

Within the common-mode input voltage range (V_{CM}), (figure 42) 0,700 V $\leq V_{CM} \leq$ 1,800 V a LVD receiver shall indicate the logical states shown in table A.5 with V_S within the ranges shown in table A.5.

Table A.5 - Receiver steady state input voltage ranges

Input voltage range steady state	Receiver detects
-3,6 V $\leq V_S \leq$ -0,030 V	1
0,030 V $\leq V_S \leq$ 3,6V	0

A.3.2 Compliance test

Compliance to the requirements in A.3.1 shall be verified with the input voltages of table A.6 and the circuit of figure A.10.

Table A.6 - Receiver minimum and maximum input voltages.

Applied voltages (input voltage - referenced to circuit common) (see figure A.10)		Resulting differential input voltage	Resulting common-voltage input voltage
V_-	V_+	V_S	V_{CM}
0,715	0,685	0,030	0,700
0,685	0.715	-0.030	0,700
1,815	1,785	0,030	1,800
1,785	1,815	-0.030	1,800
3,600	0,000	3,600	1,800
0,000	3,600	-3,600	1,800
3,955	-0,355	4,310	1,800
-0,355	3,955	-4,310	1,800

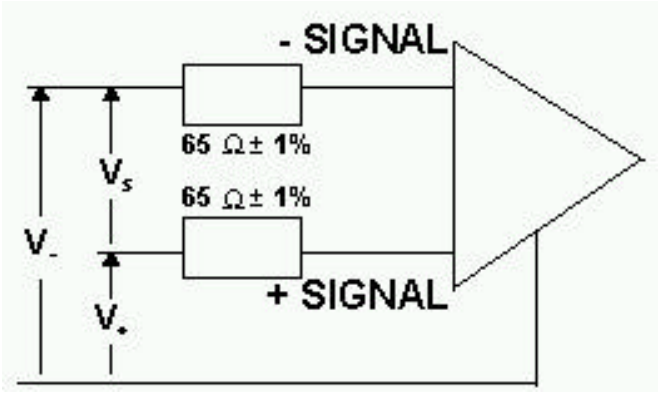


Figure A.10 - Receiver input voltage threshold test circuit

A.3.3 Receiver setup and hold times

Figure 45 and figure 50 define the receiver setup and hold times.

NOTE 42 - Dynamic testing is required to verify these timings.

A.4 Transceiver characteristics

A.4.1 Transceiver output/input currents, I_{I-L} and I_{I+L}

The requirements in this clause apply as a test method to ensure compliance with table 22. The limits in this subclause

will be controlled by table 22 in all cases. With the transceiver in an off condition (i.e., not transmitting) and the + and - signals connected to a variable voltage source, $V_{applied}$, the currents I_{I-L} and I_{I+L} shall not exceed the applicable values in table 22 over the range 0.00 V $\leq V_{applied} \leq$ 3.6 V (see figure A.11). The maximum applicable current from table 22 is I_{max}.

These measurements apply with the transceiver's power supply in both power-on and power-off conditions.

$| I_{I-L} | < I_{max}$

$| I_{I+L} | < I_{max}$

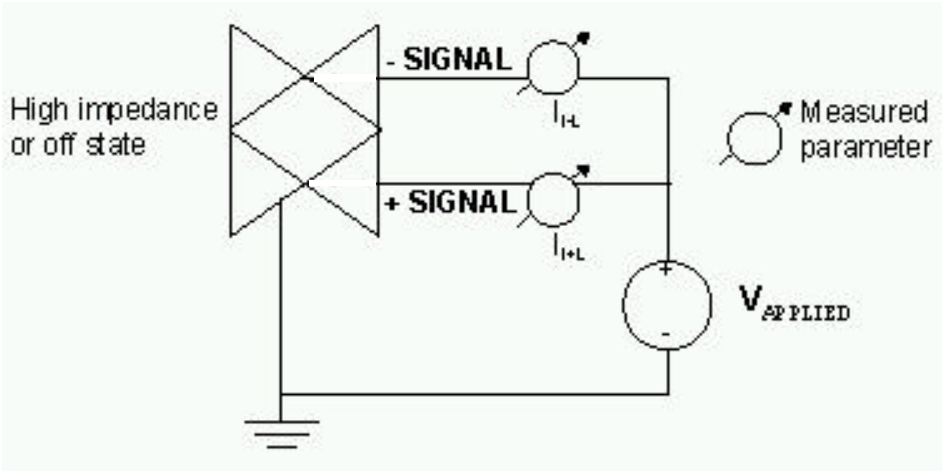


Figure A.11 - Transceiver off-state output current test circuit

A.4.2 Transceiver maximum input voltages

See table 22.

Annex B

(normative)

SCSI configured automatically (SCAM)

B.1 Model

Implementation of the SCAM protocol is optional, however, if implemented, the SCSI SCAM protocol shall conform to this annex.

The SCAM protocol is defined by this annex. SCAM is defined to ease user problems with the configuration of SCSI IDs on an SCSI bus. Level 2 SCAM defines all the hardware and software requirements necessary to implement all the functionality described in this annex. Level 1 SCAM defines a subset that does not support all of the advanced features of level 2 (e.g., hot plugging). It is intended to solve most configuration problems common to the single-user system.

B.2 Glossary

For the purposes of this annex, the following definitions apply in addition to those in the body of the standard.

B.2.1 assigned ID. An SCSI ID which has been inherently (in the case of SCAM tolerant devices), explicitly (by SCAM protocol) or implicitly (by SCSI selection of a minimum duration) established for an SCSI device. When an ID is assigned it also becomes the current ID. Similarly, once an ID is assigned any change to the device's current ID by non-SCAM means (e.g., a MODE SELECT command) also changes the assigned ID.

B.2.2 current ID: The SCSI ID that is available to an SCSI port. It may originate from jumpers, switches, mode parameters or some other source.

B.2.3 SCAM device: Any SCSI device, initiator or target, that implements the SCAM protocol defined in this annex.

B.2.4 SCAM initiator: A SCAM device that is capable of initiating SCAM selection and performing the normal functions of an SCSI initiator. These capabilities permit a SCAM initiator to scan an SCSI bus to discriminate between SCAM tolerant and SCAM devices and assign ID's to the SCAM devices.

B.2.5 SCAM target:A SCAM device that is capable of recognizing and responding to SCAM selection. This capability permits a SCAM target to receive an ID assignment from a SCAM initiator. A SCAM target shall have a current ID, even when it is unassigned.

B.2.6 SCAM tolerant: An SCSI device which does not implement the SCAM protocol but which complies with certain requirements specified by this annex. SCAM tolerant devices can be detected by a SCAM initiator and may be intermixed with SCAM devices.

B.2.7 unassigned ID: The current SCSI ID which is available to the device but has not yet been assigned to the device.

B.3 SCAM requirements

B.3.1 Configuration requirements

SCAM configuration requirements permit SCAM tolerant, level 1 SCAM and level 2 SCAM devices to operate on the same SCSI bus. These requirements are:

a) SCAM intolerant devices (i.e., legacy SCSI devices which are not SCAM tolerant) are not permitted on the bus;
b) Any SCSI initiator on the bus shall be a SCAM initiator;
c) No more than one level 1 SCAM initiator is permitted on the bus;
d) Multiple level 2 SCAM initiators are permitted on the bus, which they may share with up to one level 1 SCAM initiator;
e) All SCAM tolerant and level 1 SCAM targets on the bus shall be powered on before or concurrently with a SCAM initiator;
f) If the only SCAM initiator is a level 1 SCAM initiator, all devices should be powered on before or concurrently with the level 1 SCAM initiator. The SCAM protocol does not provide the capability for SCAM level 1 initiators to detect level 2 SCAM targets powered on after the level 1 SCAM initiator has completed SCAM protocol, until a subsequent reset indication.

Some of these configuration requirements may be overcome by means outside the scope of this annex.

B.3.2 Timing requirements

Unless otherwise indicated, the time measurements for each SCAM or SCAM tolerant device, shown in table B.1, shall be measured for signal conditions existing at that SCSI device's own SCSI bus connection.

.

Table B.1 - SCAM timing values

Description	Value
SCAM tolerant power-on to selection delay	5 s
SCAM tolerant reset to selection delay	250 ms
SCAM tolerant selection response time	1 ms
SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay	4 ms
SCAM power-on to SCAM selection delay	1 s
SCAM reset to SCAM selection delay	250 ms
SCAM selection response time	250 ms
Recommended SCAM selection response time	1 ms
Wide arbitration time	7,2 μs

B.3.2.1 SCAM tolerant power-on to selection delay

The maximum time a SCAM tolerant device may delay after power-on before enabling its response to selection.

B.3.2.2 SCAM tolerant reset to selection delay

A SCAM tolerant device shall enable its response to selection within this time limit, measured from the release of the RST signal.

A SCAM initiator shall wait at least a SCAM tolerant reset to selection delay before starting SCSI ID

categorization (see B.5.1.1.1).

B.3.2.3 SCAM tolerant selection response time

A SCAM tolerant device shall respond to selection of its current ID within this time limit, provided that both the SCAM tolerant power-on to selection and reset to selection delays have been satisfied.

A SCAM initiator should use a minimum selection timeout of a SCAM tolerant selection response time plus two bus settle delays when scanning the bus for SCAM tolerant devices.

B.3.2.4 SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay

The minimum time a SCAM device shall delay before responding to selection of its current ID, provided that the SCAM device has not been assigned an ID since the last power-on or reset.

A SCAM initiator should use a maximum selection time-out less a SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay when scanning the bus for SCAM tolerant devices.

B.3.2.5 SCAM power-on to SCAM selection delay

A SCAM device shall enable its response to SCAM protocol initiation within this time limit.

A SCAM initiator or level 2 SCAM target shall wait at least a SCAM power-on to SCAM selection delay before initiating SCAM protocol.

B.3.2.6 SCAM reset to SCAM selection delay

The minimum time, measured from the bus free that immediately follows a reset, a SCAM device shall delay after a reset before initiating SCAM protocol.

B.3.2.7 SCAM selection response time

The maximum time a SCAM device shall require to detect and respond to SCAM selection. This is also the minimum time a SCAM initiator should maintain SCAM selection in situations where a slow response by other SCAM devices is anticipated (e.g. firmware SCAM implementations).

B.3.2.8 Recommended SCAM selection response time

The minimum time a SCAM device should maintain SCAM selection in situations where a rapid response by other SCAM devices is anticipated (e.g. hardware SCAM implementations). This is also the recommended maximum time a SCAM device should require to detect and respond to SCAM selection.

B.3.2.9 Wide arbitration time

The maximum time after the assertion of BSY within which a SCAM or SCAM tolerant device with an ID greater than 7 shall assert the SEL signal.

> NOTE 43 - This requirement is necessary for arbitration without an ID to work on mixed width buses. It is based on the assumption that all wide SCSI devices implement arbitration logic in hardware and therefore can be relied on to assert the SEL signal quickly if they win arbitration.

B.3.3 Device requirements

The following subclauses define the operational requirements of SCAM and SCAM tolerant devices that may be configured on the same SCSI bus.

In addition, all SCAM devices shall disable active negation of SCSI bus signals during SCAM protocol.

B.3.3.1 SCAM tolerant target

A SCAM tolerant target:

a) shall enable its response to selection within a SCAM tolerant power-on to selection delay after the device is powered-on.
b) shall enable its response to selection within a SCAM tolerant reset to selection delay after a reset.
c) shall recognize a valid selection of the device's current ID whether or not an initiator ID is present during the SELECTION phase.shall, once selection response is enabled, recognize a valid selection of its current ID and assert the BSY signal no later than a SCAM tolerant selection response time after the start of the SELECTION phase. The current ID and the assigned ID are the same for SCAM tolerant devices.

NOTE 44 - It is recommended that initiators clear the DISCPRIV bit in the IDENTIFY message if selection is performed without an initiator ID.

NOTE 45 - The requirement for rapid response to selection by SCAM tolerant devices and delayed response to selection by SCAM devices that do not have assigned ID's permits SCAM initiators to distinguish between the two. A SCAM initiator may use a relatively short selection timeout (SCAM tolerant selection response time plus two bus settle delays) to scan the bus for SCAM tolerant devices without causing the assignment of an ID.

B.3.3.2 Level 1 SCAM initiator

A level 1 SCAM initiator:

a) shall recognize reset at all times.

NOTE 46 - SCAM implementations, whether in firmware or hardware, are expected to monitor the RST signal even while engaged in SCAM protocol.

b) shall be capable of initiating SCAM protocol and utilizing SCAM function sequences to assign ID's to SCAM devices. Level 1 SCAM initiators are not required to detect or respond to SCAM selection.
c) shall be capable of detecting a dominant initiator contention function code and subsequently participate in the isolation stage for the dominant initiator.
d) It is recommended that level 1 SCAM initiators perform dominant initiator contention each time SCAM protocol is initiated.
e) shall have an assigned ID.
f) shall be able to operate with a selection timeout greater than the SCAM tolerant selection response time and less than the SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay. A level 1 SCAM initiator shall also be able to operate with a selection timeout greater than the SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay.
g) shall not assert the RST signal upon a selection time-out.

B.3.3.3 Level 1 SCAM target

A level 1 SCAM target:

a) shall recognize reset at all times.

NOTE 47 - SCAM implementations, whether in firmware or hardware, are expected to monitor the RST signal even while engaged in SCAM protocol.

b) shall enable its response to SCAM selection within a SCAM power-on to SCAM selection delay after the device is powered-on.
c) shall enable its response to SCAM selection within a SCAM reset to SCAM selection delay after a reset.
d) shall, once SCAM selection response is enabled and provided that its device ID is unassigned,

recognize and respond to SCAM selection within a SCAM selection response time.
e) shall not, while its ID remains unassigned, start a SELECTION phase unless the SEL signal and the SCSI ID bit that encodes the unassigned ID are true and the BSY and I/O signals are false for at least a SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay. Response to selection shall cause the device to have an assigned ID equal to its current ID.
f) shall, once assigned an ID, behave as a SCAM tolerant device until a subsequent power-on or reset.

NOTE 48 - SCAM devices with assigned ID's neither recognize, respond to nor initiate SCAM selection.

g) shall not assert the RST signal a selection time-out.
h) shall not implement the soft reset alternative as defined in SCSI-2.

B.3.3.4 Level 2 SCAM initiator

A level 2 SCAM initiator:

a) shall recognize reset at all times.

NOTE 49 - SCAM implementations, whether in firmware or hardware, are expected to monitor the RST signal even while engaged in SCAM protocol.

b) shall be capable of initiating SCAM protocol and utilizing SCAM function sequences to assign ID's to SCAM devices. Level 2 SCAM initiators are also required to detect and respond to SCAM selection initiated by other SCAM devices.
c) shall perform dominant initiator contention each time SCAM protocol is initiated.
d) shall have either an assigned ID or be able to arbitrate without an ID.
e) shall be able to operate with a selection timeout greater than the SCAM tolerant selection response time and less than the SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay. A level 2 SCAM initiator shall also be able to operate with a selection timeout greater than the SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay.
f) shall not assert the RST signal upon a selection time-out.
g) shall, provided an assigned or current ID is available, satisfy the requirements for a SCAM tolerant device.

NOTE 50 - A level 2 SCAM initiator without a current ID may receive an assigned ID by one of two methods: either it assigns itself an ID or, by means of SCAM protocol functions, is assigned an ID by another SCAM initiator. A level 2 SCAM initiator that has a current ID may receive an assigned ID by either of these two methods or its current ID may become its assigned ID if a selection indication for the SCAM initiator's current ID if a SELECTION phase for the current ID is continuously valid for at least a SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay.

h) shall, once SCAM selection response is enabled and provided that its device ID is unassigned, recognize and respond to SCAM selection within a SCAM selection response time.
i) shall not, while its ID remains unassigned, start a SELECTION phase unless the SEL signal and the SCSI ID bit that encodes the unassigned ID are true and the BSY and I/O signals are false for at least a SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay. The end of the SELECTION phase shall cause the device to have an assigned ID equal to its current ID.

B.3.3.5 Level 2 SCAM target

A level 2 SCAM target:

a) shall recognize reset at all times.

NOTE 51 - SCAM implementations, whether in firmware or hardware, are expected to monitor the RST signal even while engaged in SCAM protocol.

b) shall enable its response to SCAM selection within a SCAM power-on to SCAM selection delay after the device is powered-on.
c) shall enable its response to SCAM selection within a SCAM reset to SCAM selection delay after a reset.
d) shall, once selection response is enabled and provided that the device ID is unassigned, recognize and respond to SCAM selection within a SCAM selection response time.
e) shall not, while its ID remains unassigned, start a SELECTION phase unless the SEL signal and the SCSI ID bit that encodes the unassigned ID are true and the BSY and I/O signals are false for at least a SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay. Response to selection shall cause the device to have an assigned ID equal to its current ID.
f) shall, once assigned an ID, behave as a SCAM tolerant device until a subsequent power-on or reset.

NOTE 52 - SCAM devices with assigned ID's neither recognize, respond to nor initiate SCAM selection.

g) shall not assert the RST signal upon a selection time-out.
h) shall not implement the soft reset alternative as defined in SCSI-2.
i) shall be capable of arbitration without an ID. Subsequent to power-on, a level 2 SCAM target shall initiate SCAM protocol provided that the device does not have an assigned ID and no reset has occurred.

B.4 SCAM protocol

SCAM is a distributed algorithm collectively executed by a group of participating SCAM devices. The communication is accomplished by shared (wired-OR) SCSI bus signals that may be asserted or released by the SCAM devices, but which shall not be negated by any participating device. Any SCAM device which is capable of active negation of SCSI bus signals shall disable active negation during SCAM protocol.

B.4.1 Initiation

A device initiates the SCAM protocol by first winning bus arbitration, then performing SCAM selection. The device may arbitrate using its current ID or it may arbitrate without an ID. After winning arbitration the device has the BSY and SEL signals asserted. It shall release all DATA BUS signals and assert the MSG signal, then wait at least two deskew delays and release the BSY signal. It shall maintain this pattern of the SEL and MSG signals asserted with the BSY signal released for a minimum of a recommended SCAM selection response time, then release the MSG signal. After releasing the MSG signal the device shall wait, using wired-OR glitch filtering (see 7.1.3 and 7.2.2), until the MSG signal has been released by all other devices.

Level 2 SCAM initiators and SCAM targets that have not yet been assigned an ID recognize SCAM selection if a pattern of the SEL and MSG true and the BSY signal false is detected. After a variable delay, devices responding to SCAM selection release the MSG signal, then wait, using wired-OR glitch filtering, until the MSG signal has been released by all devices. SCAM targets should release the MSG signal quickly, perhaps never asserting it at all. SCAM initiators should wait a SCAM selection response time before releasing the MSG signal.

After wired-OR glitch filtering is used to detect the MSG signal false, each SCAM device asserts the BSY signal, waits at least two deskew delays, then asserts several other signals. SCAM initiators assert the BSY signal followed by the I/O, C/D, DB(6) and DB(7) signals. SCAM targets assert the BSY signal followed by the I/O, DB(6) and DB(7) signals. After asserting its signals each device waits at least two more deskew delays, then releases the SEL signal and waits, using wired-OR glitch filtering, until the SEL signal has been released by all devices.

After detecting that the SEL signal has been released by all devices, SCAM devices release the DB(6) signal and examine the bus signals. If the C/D signal is false, then there are no SCAM initiators participating and SCAM targets shall release all signals. If the C/D signal is true, each SCAM device waits,

using wired-OR glitch filtering, for the DB(6) signal to be released by all devices and then asserts the SEL signal. Initiation of the SCAM protocol is complete after the SEL signal has been asserted.

B.4.1.1 Transfer cycles

The SCAM protocol functions through sequences of transfer cycles. During each transfer cycle certain devices broadcast data to all participating SCAM devices. The actual data received is the logical-OR of the data broadcast by all the sending devices. Each transfer cycle is fully interlocked in the same sense that asynchronous data transfers are interlocked. Completion of each step of the transfer is explicitly acknowledged, and the transfer rate adapts automatically to the μA of the SCAM devices involved.

Transfer cycles use the DB(7-5) signals as handshake lines and the DB(4-0) signals as data lines. At the beginning and end of each transfer cycle the DB(7) signal is asserted while the DB(6) and DB(5) signals are released. As shown in figure B.1 each device repeats the following steps for each transfer cycle:

1) Assert data on the DB(4-0) signals, if the device is broadcasting data. Devices that have no data to broadcast release these signals. All devices assert the DB(5) signal.
10) All devices release the DB(7) signal.
11) Wait, using wired-OR glitch filtering, until the DB(7) signal is released by all devices.
12) Read and latch data from the DB(4-0) signals. All devices assert the DB(6) signal.
13) All devices release the DB(5) signal.
14) Wait, using wired-OR glitch filtering, until the DB(5) signal is released by all devices.
15) Release or change the DB(4-0) signals. All devices assert the DB(7) signal.
16) All devices release the DB(6) signal.
17) Wait, using wired-OR glitch filtering, until the DB(6) signal is released by all devices.

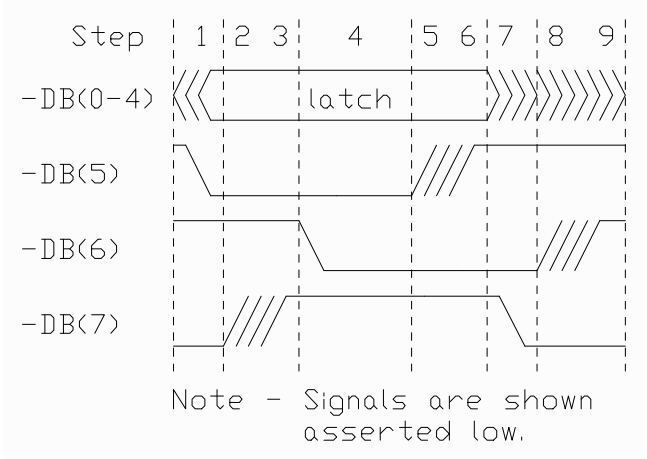


Figure B.1 - Transfer cycles

The SCAM protocol continues through successive transfer cycles until the dominant SCAM initiator chooses to terminate it by releasing the C/D signal and all other signals. SCAM targets shall note the release of the C/D signal and release all signals.

B.4.1.2 Wired-OR glitch filtering

Many of the SCSI signals used by SCAM protocol are asserted by more than one SCAM device. Consequently, when one of these signals is released by a SCAM device there may be a transient period in which the signal is observed to be false even though it is still asserted by other SCAM devices. In order to eliminate these incorrect observations (and the consequent malfunction of the SCAM protocol), all SCAM devices shall perform wired-OR glitch filtering on the shared SCSI signals.

Wired-OR glitch filters may be designed into the hardware. In this case the hardware must be capable of detecting that a signal has remained continuously false for at least a bus settle delay.

NOTE 53 - This continuous observation of a signal requires dedicated hardware; it cannot be performed by software alone.

As an alternative, SCAM devices may implement wired-OR glitch filtering in software if the procedure described below is used. The algorithm used relies on the fact that a single device that releases a wired-OR signal can cause the signal to be incorrectly observed false for a maximum of a bus settle delay.

1) Determine the iteration count to be used in the software polling loop. This is typically 8, 16 or 32 if the SCAM device has knowledge (by means beyond the scope of this annex) that the SCSI bus can support the maximum number of devices. SCAM devices that have no means to determine the width of the SCSI bus should use an iteration count of 32.
2) If the signal is observed to be true, reset the iteration count to the initial value determined above. If the signal is observed to be false, decrement the iteration count. If the iteration count is zero, the signal has been released by all devices.
3) Wait sufficient time to guarantee that at least a bus settle delay elapses. Continue with the preceding step.

As an alternative to waiting at least a bus settle delay between samples, the implementor may wish to calculate the iteration count as follows. If the minimum sample interval is known, calculate N equal to a bus settle delay divided by the minimum sample interval. Round the number obtained up to the next higher integer. If the iteration count is set to N times the maximum number of devices on the SCSI bus, the algorithm above can be used without the need to wait between successive samples.

B.4.1.3 Isolation stage

Many SCAM function sequences require an isolation stage, which is used to isolate or identify an individual device to perform some action. During an isolation stage each participating device sends an identification string bit serially. As it sends its identification string, each participating device compares its own identification string with the strings of other devices. If a device observes a numerically higher string than its own identification string, it defers for the remainder of the function sequence and participates in subsequent function sequences only after a synchronization pattern is observed. After the isolation stage completes, only the device with the numerically highest identification string is still participating, and that device performs whatever action is specified by the function code (or subsequent action code). Identification strings are sent starting with the most significant bit of the most significant byte and ending with the least significant bit of the least significant byte.

During each transfer cycle of an isolation stage, the devices that are still participating assert the DB(0) signal if the next bit of their identification string is zero, the DB(1) signal if the next bit of their identification string is one, or release the DB(4-0) signals if they have reached the end of their identification string. SCAM initiators may assert the DB(4) signal to terminate the isolation stage prematurely. Each participating device reads the data transferred during each transfer cycle and acts on the conditions defined in table B.2.

Table B.2 - Transfer cycle conditions

Bit value	Asserted on DB(4-0)	Latched from DB(4-0)	Condition
0	00001b	00001b	Continue
		00011b	Defer

Table B.2 - Transfer cycle conditions

Bit value	Asserted on DB(4-0)	Latched from DB(4-0)	Condition
1	00010b	0001xb	Continue
none	00000b	000x1b	Defer
		0001xb	Defer
		00000b	Terminate
any	000xxb	100xxb	Terminate
		any other value	Error

The continue condition means the device shall continue to participate in the isolation stage.

The defer condition means that the device has lost to a device with a higher identification string. The device shall continue to handshake data on the DB(7-5) signals at the same time the DB(4-0) signals are released. The device shall continue in this fashion until the next synchronization pattern is observed, after which the device may respond to the function code that follows.

The terminate condition means that the isolation stage has terminated. The action to be performed by the remaining device(s) is either implicit in the function code or specified by subsequent transfer cycles in the function sequence. Usually only one SCAM device will still be participating and perform the action. However, if a SCAM initiator terminates the isolation phase by asserting the DB(4) signal, multiple devices may perform the action. SCAM targets shall not differentiate these cases, they shall act the same regardless of how the isolation stage was terminated. It is the responsibility of the SCAM initiator(s) to determine whether multiple devices remain (perhaps using configuration knowledge outside the scope of this annex) and ensure that suitable actions are performed.

The error condition implies that a bus error or reserved pattern was encountered. It is typically treated the same as the defer condition; the exact treatment is described in the individual function sequence descriptions.

SCAM initiators typically examine the identification strings for use in determining the nature of the isolated device and what action should be performed. The identification string of the isolated device is obtained from the DB(1) signal. The end of the identification string is recognized when both the DB(0) and DB(1) signals are false.

The structure of the identification string is shown in table B.3.

Table B.3 - Identification string

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)			TYPE CODE				
1								(LSB)
2	(MSB)			VENDOR IDENTIFICATION				
9								(LSB)
10	(MSB)			VENDOR SPECIFIC CODE (up to 21 bytes)				
30								(LSB)

The identification string, at present, has a maximum length of 31 bytes. SCAM initiators shall accept identification strings up to 32 bytes total length in order to permit future SCAM protocol extensions.

The first (most significant) two bytes of a device identification string contain a type code. The contents of the TYPE CODE field is defined in table B.4. Reserved bits in the type code shall be broadcast as zeros. A SCAM device that receives a one in any reserved bit shall defer for the remainder of the function sequence.

Table B.4 - Type code

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PRIORITY CODE		MAXIMUM ID CODE		RESERVED	ID VALID		SNA
1	RESERVED				ID			

The PRIORITY CODE field contains a value specific to the function code that preceded isolation. If the function code is isolate or isolate and set priority flag, the priority code is the device's priority flag followed by a zero. All SCAM devices maintain a priority flag, which is set to one upon power-on or after a reset i. The value of the priority flag may also be explicitly controlled by SCAM function and action codes. If the function code is dominant initiator contention, the priority code is the dominance preference code (see table B.5).

The MAXIMUM ID CODE field encodes the largest SCSI ID that may be assigned to the device is shown in table B.5.

TABLE B.5 - MAXIMUM ID CODE

Codes	Description
00b	The device may be assigned an SCSI ID up to 1Fh.
01b	The device may be assigned an SCSI ID up to 0Fh.
10b	The device may be assigned an SCSI ID up to 07h.
11b	Reserved

The ID VALID field encodes the validity and meaning of the contents of the ID field as defined in table B.6.

TABLE B.6 - ID VALID

Codes	Description
00b	The ID field is not valid and shall be zero.
01b	The ID field contains the device's current ID but the device has not yet been assigned an ID.
10b	The ID field contains the devices assigned ID.
11b	Reserved

All SCAM targets have a current ID, but do not necessarily have an assigned ID. It is possible for SCAM initiators to have no ID, in which case they report that the ID field is not valid.

A serial number available (SNA) bit of zero indicates the entire identification string is unavailable and will not be available until a lengthy delay (e.g., for a mechanical device access). A SNA bit of one indicates the device's entire identification string is present. SCAM devices shall insure that both type code bytes and the most significant bit of the vendor ID code are available at all times. If the device's identification string is not yet available and the device continues to participate in the isolation stage, the device shall stall some subsequent data transfer cycle until its identification information is available.

NOTE 54 - Some SCAM initiators may assert the DB(4) signal to terminate the isolation stage if this bit is zero, with the intention to retry the function sequence after a delay. For this reason devices should obtain their full identification string as soon as possible in preparation for future isolation stages.

The ID field contains the device's current but unassigned ID, the device's assigned ID or an undefined value as indicated by the ID VALID field.

The VENDOR IDENTIFICATION field contains eight bytes of ASCII data identifying the vendor of the SCAM device. The data shall be identical to the VENDOR IDENTIFICATION field returned in INQUIRY data for the device (See SCSI-3 Primary Commands Standard).

The VENDOR SPECIFIC CODE field contains up to 21 bytes of data that, together with the VENDOR IDENTIFICATION field, uniquely identify the SCAM device on the bus. The device vendor shall select the vendor specific code such that no two devices from the same vendor on the same bus have identical values. The recommended method for creation of the vendor specific code is to concatenate the model identification with the device serial number.

NOTE 55 - The vendor specific code should be an ASCII data field that contains only graphic codes (i.e., code values 20h through 7Eh, inclusive). Unused bytes should occupy the least significant bytes of the field and be filled with space characters (20h).

B.4.1.4 Function sequences

Related transfer cycles are grouped into function sequences. Each function sequence serves a distinct purpose, such as assigning an ID to a single device.

Each function starts with a transfer cycle in which a synchronization pattern, all ones on the DB(4-0) signals, is broadcast. SCAM initiators assert the synchronization pattern to begin a new function sequence. SCAM targets shall recognize the synchronization pattern and begin a new function sequence regardless of whether the previous function sequence has been completed.

NOTE 56 - SCAM initiators may assert the synchronization pattern at any time to abort a function sequence and begin a new one.

The second transfer cycle in each function sequence specifies a function code. SCAM initiators may each assert a function code, and the resultant function code is the logical-OR of all of these codes. The operation of the function sequence and the number of subsequent transfer cycles (if any) that comprise the function sequence are determined by this resultant function code.

SCAM targets shall ignore any function sequences whose resultant function codes are reserved or are codes they do not recognize. A SCAM target ignores a function sequence by continuing the transfer cycle handshake sequence, releasing the DB(4-0) signals and ignoring the data received. This continues until the SCAM target receives the next function sequence synchronization pattern.

The following function codes are defined in table B.7.

Table B.7 - Function codes

Function Code	Description
00000b	Isolate
00001b	Isolate and set priority flag
00010b	reserved
00011b	Configuration process complete
00100b to 01110b	reserved
01111b	Dominant initiator contention
10000b to 11110b	reserved
11111b	Synchronization

B.4.1.4.1 Isolate function

This function code may be used by SCAM initiators to assign ID's to SCAM devices. After the function code, SCAM targets with unassigned ID's participate in an isolation stage. This stage normally terminates with a single SCAM target isolated. At this point, the SCAM initiator may broadcast an action code to assign an ID to the device or perform an additional function.

NOTE 57 - If the SCAM initiator terminates the isolation stage by asserting the DB(4) signal more than one SCAM target may still be participating in the isolation. In this case, all the participating devices receive the action code and perform the requested operation.

Action codes are two quintets broadcast by SCAM transfer cycles on the DB(4-0) signals. In each quintet, the DB(2-0) signals contain a three-bit code value and the DB(4-3) signals contain two check bits. The value in the DB(4-3) signals is the count of zero bits present in the DB(2-0) signals. This scheme ensures conflict detection if multiple SCAM initiators erroneously broadcast different action codes.

The action codes are defined in table B.8 below.

Table B.8 - Action codes

First quintet	Second quintet	Description
11000b	ccnnnb	Assign ID 00nnnb
10001b	ccnnnb	Assign ID 01nnnb
10010b	ccnnnb	Assign ID 10nnnb
01011b	ccnnnb	Assign ID 11nnnb
10100b	11000b	Clear priority flag
	10010b	Locate on
	01011b	Locate off
	others	Reserved
others		Reserved

An action code is valid if the check bits are correct and both quintets are received. ID assignment action codes shall also specify an ID that the device can support. Isolated device(s) perform a valid action code when it is received. Transfer cycles after a valid action code and preceding the next synchronization pattern shall be ignored.

The clear priority flag action code instructs the isolated device(s) to clear the priority flag. This function is typically used when the SCAM initiator wishes to defer the assignment of an ID to the isolated device(s) until a later function sequence.

The locate on and off action codes instruct the isolated device(s) to provide assistance for users or service personnel to physically locate the device. Upon receiving a locate on action code, the recommended action is for the isolated device(s) to flash their fault indicator or activate some similar indication. The indication should be cleared upon receiving a locate off action code, a reset indication, after a time delay or upon other vendor specific actions or conditions.

A SCAM target that receives a valid ID assignment should release all bus signals and cease participating in the SCAM protocol until the next reset or power-on. SCAM targets shall continue participating in the SCAM protocol if they receive any other action code, receive an invalid or reserved action code, or do not receive an action code. Failure to receive an action code is typically caused by a SCAM initiator choosing to abort a function by asserting the synchronization pattern.

B.4.1.4.2 Isolate and set priority flag function

The isolate and set priority flag function operates exactly as the Isolate function described above except that the only valid action codes are those that assign an ID to the isolated device(s). This function also causes the device's priority flag to be set to one.

B.4.1.4.3 Configuration process complete function

The configuration process complete function is issued by the dominant SCAM initiator when the bus configuration is complete and no further ID's are to be assigned. SCAM initiators that did not win dominance should avoid using the bus until this function code is observed. A SCAM target with an unassigned ID that observes this function code should not respond to selection until a reset, power on or the assignment of an ID during a subsequent SCAM protocol invocation.

B.4.1.4.4 Dominant initiator contention function

The dominant initiator contention function selects one SCAM initiator, called the dominant SCAM initiator, from possibly multiple SCAM initiators. Level 2 SCAM initiators shall perform dominant initiator contention as the first function sequence following each SCAM protocol invocation. Level 1 SCAM initiators shall be capable of detecting and participating in dominant initiator contention. Level 1 SCAM initiators should also perform dominant initiator contention unless they can guarantee through non-SCAM means that they are the only initiator present. SCAM targets shall ignore dominant initiator contention.

Following a dominant initiator contention function code, SCAM initiators participate in an isolation stage. After the isolation stage completes the single remaining SCAM initiator is the dominant SCAM initiator. It remains the dominant SCAM initiator until the next invocation of the SCAM protocol.

SCAM initiators shall not prematurely terminate isolation after a dominant initiator contention function code. If a SCAM initiator detects the DB(4) signal true or detects an error condition during the isolation stage, it may attempt recovery by releasing all signals and waiting for bus free indication, or by generating a reset request.

Each SCAM initiator broadcasts a dominance preference code in the priority code filed of the type code bytes during isolation. The dominance preference code indicating the status of the participating SCAM initiators is defined in table B.9.

Table B.9 - Dominance preference code

Code	Description
00b	A level 1 SCAM initiator.
01b	A level 2 SCAM initiator for which code 11b does not apply.
10b	Reserved
11b	A level 2 SCAM initiator that knows it was dominant in the previous invocation of the SCAM protocol or has non-SCAM knowledge that it should attempt to become the dominant SCAM initiator.

B.5 SCAM operations

SCAM operations encompass all those functions, for both SCAM initiators and targets, that are necessary to differentiate SCAM tolerant and SCAM devices and to subsequently assign ID's to SCAM devices. It is necessary to understand the operations of both SCAM initiators and targets, as described below, and their interactions to obtain a clear picture of SCAM operations.

B.5.1 SCAM initiator

Subsequent to power-on, a SCAM initiator should complete its local initialization and shall wait at least a

SCAM power-on to SCAM selection delay before initiating any SCSI bus activity. A SCAM initiator that is a level 1 SCAM device or that can determine by means beyond the scope of this annex that it is the dominant SCAM initiator should assert the RST signal after power-on. A level 2 SCAM initiator that cannot a priori determine that it is the dominant SCAM initiator should not assert the RST signal but should initiate SCAM protocol, as described below, as if a reset had occurred.

After a SCAM initiator has asserted the RST signal or received a reset, it shall initiate SCAM protocol after the BUS FREE phase that immediately follows a reset. The first function sequence should be a dominant initiator contention function. If the SCAM initiator broadcasts the numerically highest identification string during the isolation stage, it becomes the dominant SCAM initiator. If the SCAM initiator does not have the highest identification string, it becomes a subordinate SCAM initiator.

NOTE 58 - Level 1 SCAM initiators are not required to perform dominant initiator contention, but they shall detect a dominant initiator contention function broadcast by another SCAM initiator. The identification string of a level 1 SCAM initiator is defined so that it cannot win contention with a level 2 SCAM initiator; thus the losing level 1 SCAM initiator assumes the role of a subordinate SCAM initiator.

Level 2 SCAM initiators shall always be enabled to detect the initiation of SCAM protocol by another SCAM device.

B.5.1.1 Dominant SCAM initiator

A dominant SCAM initiator is responsible to categorize possible SCSI ID's as assigned or unassigned and then to assign ID's to SCAM devices as necessary. Once this process of ID assignment is complete, the dominant SCAM initiator should broadcast a configuration process complete function. This function sequence has two purposes; it communicates to subordinate SCAM initiators that they may resume normal SCSI operations (and scan the SCSI bus) and it confirms that SCAM targets with unassigned ID's shall remain in this state and not respond to normal SCSI selection.

Dominant SCAM initiators may be implemented in several ways so long as the functions of SCSI ID categorization and assignment are performed as specified below.

B.5.1.1.1 SCSI ID categorization

After a reset, a dominant SCAM initiator shall wait as necessary to insure that a SCAM tolerant reset to selection delay has elapsed. The dominant SCAM initiator shall initialize an internal table of SCSI ID's to indicate that all SCSI ID's are uncategorized. A dominant SCAM initiator shall categorize each uncategorized ID by winning arbitration and selecting the uncategorized ID with a selection time-out delay greater than the SCAM tolerant selection response time and less than the SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay. If the dominant SCAM initiator has an assigned ID, it may use it to arbitrate, otherwise it shall arbitrate without an ID.

If a selection time-out is detected, the dominant SCAM initiator shall categorize the ID as unassigned. If the SCSI device responds to selection by asserting the BSY signal, the dominant SCAM initiator shall categorize the ID as assigned. In this case, the dominant SCAM initiator should complete an INQUIRY or similar command sequence to gracefully conclude selection of the SCSI device.

The dominant SCAM initiator shall repeat this process until all SCSI ID's have been categorized as either assigned or unassigned.

NOTE 59 - SCSI ID's may be categorized by means outside the scope of this annex, for example, by configuration parameters. This may eliminate the need for SCSI ID categorization altogether.

B.5.1.1.2 SCSI ID assignment

Once all SCSI ID's are categorized, the dominant SCAM initiator should initiate SCAM protocol and iteratively isolate and assign ID's to all SCAM devices. The dominant SCAM initiator should perform a

dominant initiator contention function sequence to guaranty that it remains the dominant initiator. If the formerly dominant SCAM initiator loses dominant initiator contention, it should continue to participate in SCAM protocol but function as a subordinate SCAM initiator.

Once the assignment of SCSI ID's is completed, through one or more instances of SCAM protocol, the dominant SCAM initiator should broadcast a configuration process complete function sequence and terminate SCAM protocol.

B.5.1.2 Subordinate SCAM initiator

A subordinate SCAM initiator shall continue to participate in the SCAM protocol and respond to all SCAM function sequences. If the subordinate SCAM initiator does not have an assigned ID, this is necessary so that the dominant SCAM initiator may assign an SCSI ID. Unlike a SCAM target, a subordinate SCAM initiator should not release all signals and stop participation in SCAM protocol once it has been assigned an ID. Instead, it should recognize only synchronization patterns and the configuration process complete function sequence.

If the subordinate SCAM initiator detects the termination of SCAM protocol but has not observed a configuration process complete function sequence, it shall not resume normal SCSI operations. Level 2 SCAM initiators shall continue to be able to detect the initiation of SCAM protocol.

B.5.2 Level 1 SCAM target

Level 1 SCAM target operation is illustrated in figure B.2 below. State names are referenced in the description that follows.

NOTE 60 - Reset shall cause an exit from any state and places the SCAM target in the reset delay state.

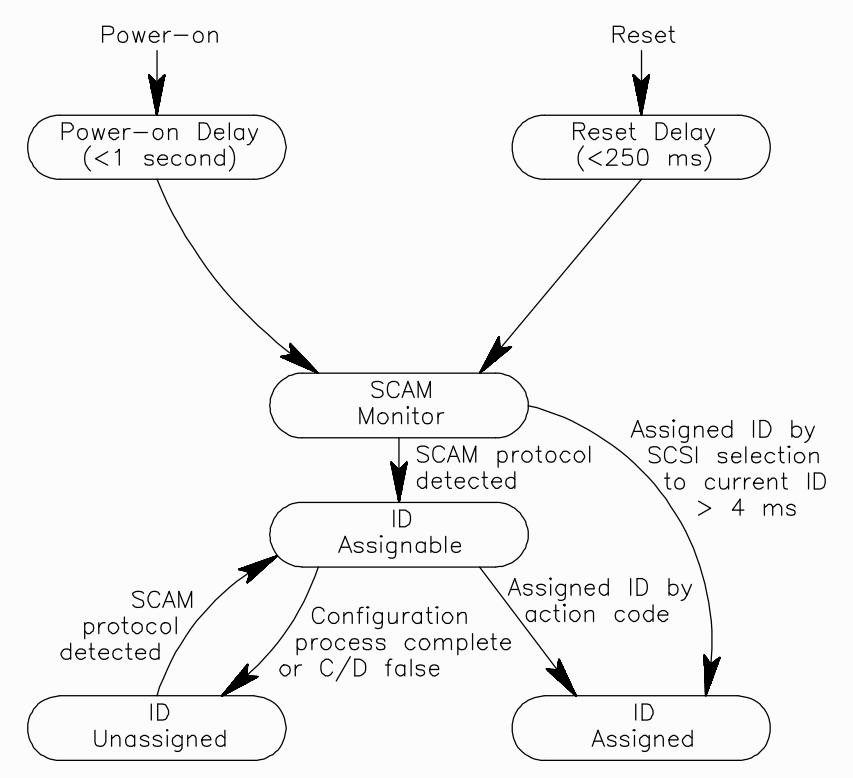


Figure B.2 - Level 1 SCAM target states

When a SCAM target is powered-on, it immediately enters the power-on delay state and may perform local initialization. The SCAM target shall leave this state and enter the SCAM monitor state within a SCAM power-on to SCAM selection delay.

While in the SCAM monitor state, a SCAM target shall monitor the SCSI bus for both SCAM selection and normal SCSI selection. If the SCAM target detects the initiation of SCAM protocol, it shall enter the ID assignable state. If a SELECTION phase for the SCAM target's current ID is received after the SCSI bus signals required for selection have been continuously valid for at least a SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay, the SCAM target shall respond to selection and assert the RST signal. This response to selection implicitly causes the SCAM target to enter the ID assigned state just as if an explicit ID assignment had been received. The assigned ID is set to the current ID and the SCAM target now functions as a SCAM tolerant device.

A SCAM target remains in the ID assignable state as long as SCAM protocol is maintained until explicit SCAM functions change its state. If a SCAM target is isolated and receives an assign ID action code, the ID specified becomes both the current and assigned ID. The SCAM target releases all SCSI bus signals and enters the assigned ID state. If the SCAM target receives a configuration process complete function code or if SCAM protocol is terminated (the C/D signal is false), it should release all SCSI bus signals and enter the ID unassigned state.

NOTE 61 - Some SCAM targets do not recognize the configuration process complete function code and return to the SCAM monitor state when SCAM protocol is terminated.

A SCAM target in the ID unassigned state has not had any SCSI ID explicitly or implicitly assigned and shall not respond to SCSI selections for its current ID regardless of the duration. With the exception of a power-on or reset, only the detection of SCAM protocol initiation shall cause the SCAM target to leave the ID unassigned state.

Once a SCAM target has reached the ID assigned state it functions as a SCAM tolerant device with the ID assigned. That is, it shall respond to SCSI selection within a SCAM tolerant selection response time and shall not recognize nor respond to SCAM selection.

A reset shall cause a SCAM target to enter the reset delay state, in which it may perform local initialization. The SCAM target shall leave this state and enter the SCAM monitor state within a SCAM reset to SCAM selection delay.

B.5.3 Level 2 SCAM target

Level 2 SCAM target operation is illustrated in figure B.3 below. State names are referenced in the description that follows. A reset shall cause an exit from any state and places the SCAM target in the reset delay state.

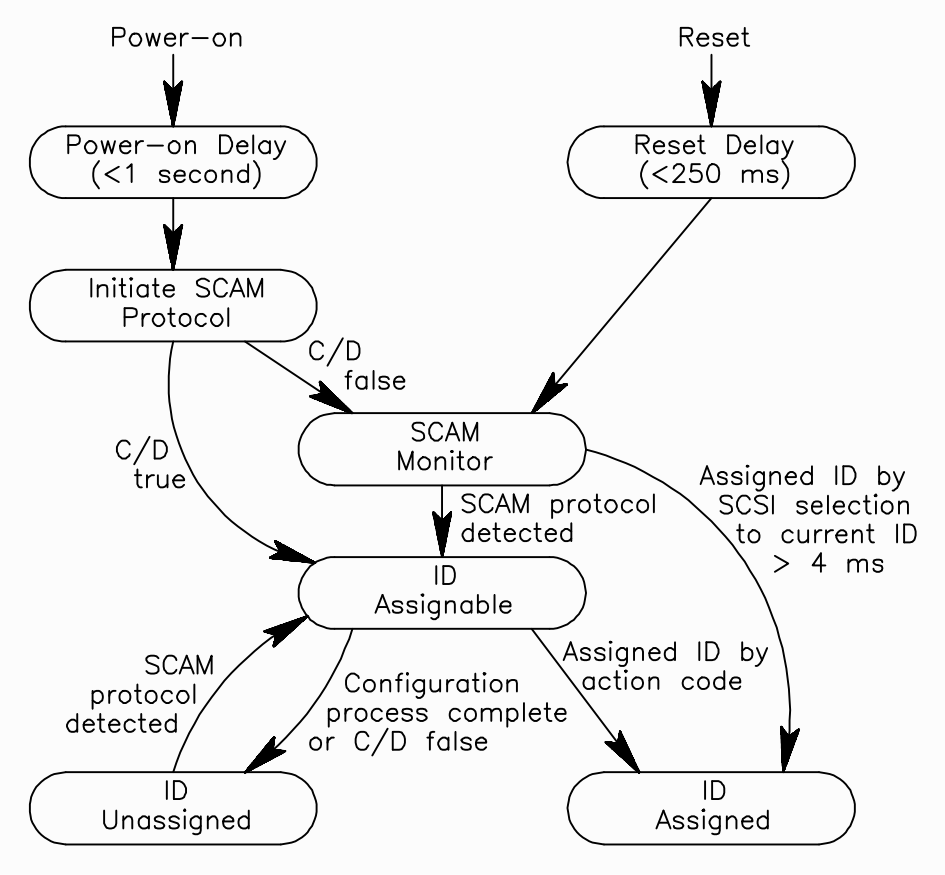


Figure B.3 - Level 2 SCAM target states

When a SCAM target is powered-on, it immediately enters the power-on delay state and may perform local initialization. The SCAM target shall leave this state and enter the Initiate SCAM protocol state within a SCAM power-on to SCAM selection delay.

In the Initiate SCAM protocol state, a level 2 SCAM target shall arbitrate for the SCSI bus without an ID and perform SCAM selection. After a SCAM selection delay, the SCAM target shall examine the SCSI bus to determine the state of the C/D signal. If the C/D signal is true, there is a SCAM initiator present and the SCAM target shall enter the ID assignable state. If the C/D signal is false, no SCAM initiator is present and the SCAM target shall enter the SCAM monitor state.

NOTE 62 - Level 2 SCAM targets make only one attempt to initiate SCAM protocol after power-on.

While in the SCAM monitor state, a SCAM target shall monitor the SCSI bus for both SCAM selection and normal SCSI selection. If the SCAM target detects the initiation of SCAM protocol, it shall enter the ID assignable state. If a SELECTION phase for the SCAM target's current ID is received after the SCSI bus signals required for selection have been continuously valid for at least a SCAM unassigned ID selection response delay, the SCAM target shall respond to selection and assert the BSY signal. This response to selection implicitly causes the SCAM target to enter the ID Assigned state just as if an explicit ID assignment had been received. The assigned ID is set to the current ID and the SCAM target now functions as a SCAM tolerant device.

A SCAM target remains in the ID assignable state as long as SCAM protocol is maintained until explicit SCAM functions change its state. If a SCAM target is isolated and receives an assign ID action code, the ID specified becomes both the current and assigned ID. The SCAM target releases all SCSI bus signals

and enters the assigned ID state. If the SCAM target receives a configuration process complete function code or if SCAM protocol is terminated (the C/D signal is false), it should release all SCSI bus signals and enter the ID unassigned state.

NOTE 63 - Some early implementations of SCAM targets do not recognize the configuration process complete function code and return to the SCAM monitor state when SCAM protocol is terminated.

A SCAM target in the ID unassigned state has not had any SCSI ID explicitly or implicitly assigned and shall not respond to SCSI selections for its current ID regardless of the duration. With the exception of a power-on or reset, only the detection of SCAM protocol initiation shall cause the SCAM target to leave the ID unassigned state.

Once a SCAM target has reached the ID assigned state it functions as a SCAM tolerant device with the ID assigned. That is, it shall respond to SCSI selection within a SCAM tolerant selection response time and shall not recognize nor respond to SCAM selection.

A reset shall cause a SCAM target to enter the reset delay state, in which it may perform local initialization. The SCAM target shall leave this state and enter the SCAM monitor state within a SCAM reset to SCAM selection delay.

Annex C

(normative)

SCSI bus fairness

C.1 Model

Implementation of the SCSI bus fairness is optional, however, if implemented, the SCSI bus fairness protocol shall conform to this annex.

A SCSI device determines “fairness” by monitoring prior arbitration attempts by other SCSI devices. It shall postpone arbitration for itself until all lower priority SCSI devices which previously lost arbitration either win a subsequent arbitration or discontinue their arbitration attempts (as in the case where the initiator aborted an outstanding command thus removing the need to re-arbitrate).

When a SCSI device does not need to arbitrate for the SCSI bus, it shall monitor the arbitration attempts of the other SCSI devices and update a fairness register with the SCSI IDs of any lower priority SCSI devices which lost arbitration.

Whenever a requirement for arbitration arises, the SCSI device shall first check to see of it’s fairness register is clear. If it is clear, then no lower priority SCSI devices had attempted and lost the previous arbitration and therefore, this SCSI device may now participate in arbitration. If the fairness register is not clear, the SCSI device shall postpone arbitration until all lower priority SCSI IDs have been cleared from the fairness register. Lower SCSI IDs are cleared as those lower level SCSI devices win arbitration. SCSI IDs shall also be cleared if a SCSI device discontinues arbitration (e.g., as a result of an ABORT TASK message, ABORT TAST SET message, CLEAR TASK SET message, TARGET RESET message, hard reset, etc.).

Since the fairness register is only refreshed when the SCSI device is not arbitrating for itself, the fairness register is effectively frozen by the SCSI device prior to a requirement for it’s own arbitration arising. Therefore, only those lower priority SCSI devices latched into the fairness register at that time will arbitrate ahead of this SCSI device. Other lower priority SCSI devices that were not latched will not be added to the fairness register until this SCSI device has successfully arbitrated.

C.2 Determining fairness by monitoring prior bus activity

The SCSI parallel protocol requires that between 3000 nsec and 3600 nsec from RST being released, the SCSI ID for all arbitrating SCSI devices must appear on the bus. The SCSI device shall sample the bus during this time, to determine which SCSI devices are attempting arbitration, which SCSI device won, and which SCSI devices lost. Since the lower priority SCSI IDs will begin to disappear at 3600 nsec, a continuous sampling of the data bus during this time is required.

NOTE 64 - For ease of implementation, the sample window can be considered to begin when BSY=1 following BUS FREE and extending until SEL=1. Sampling of the bus during this time should occur at a high enough rate to insure multiple samples within the 600 nsec window.

C.3 Fairness algorithm

A SCSI device that is not required to participate in arbitration for itself at this time shall refresh a fairness register each time any other SCSI devices arbitrate. The result is that fairness register contains the SCSI ID bits of lower priority SCSI devices (if any) which have attempted and lost arbitration.

NOTE 65 - The fairness register is refreshed after every non-participating arbitration so that SCSI devices which have discontinued arbitration are automatically removed. Thus, the contents of fairness register

only reflect the participants of the arbitration process which could immediately precede a subsequent arbitration which this SCSI device may participate in.

The fairness algorithm shall be followed as described in the following steps:

1) Latch all arbitration participants into the fairness register during the sample window.
2) Remove the arbitration winner from fairness register.
3) Remove SCSI IDs greater than or equal to the SCSI devices own SCSI ID from fairness register.

NOTE 66 - The need to remove the SCSI devices own address arises from step 4-2 which repeats these steps if the SCSI device wins arbitration.

4) If a SCSI device is required to participate in arbitration for itself and the fairness register = 0 indicating that there is no lower priority SCSI devices to be fair too then:
   1) The SCSI device shall perform a normal arbitration.
   2) If the SCSI device wins arbitration, the lower priority SCSI IDs which lost must be saved in order to determine fairness during the next arbitration cycle. This insures that this SCSI device does unfairly participate in consecutive arbitrations, (as the case for a multi-LUN SCSI device or queueing implementations).
   3) If the SCSI device losses arbitration to a higher priority SCSI device, the fairness register shall remain zero so that the SCSI device participates in the next arbitration cycle. This insures that a lower priority SCSI device will not now preempt this SCSI device from the next arbitration because a higher priority SCSI device won this arbitration.
5) If the SCSI device is required to participate in arbitration for itself and the fairness register $\neq$ 0 then;
   1) The SCSI devices become nonparticipating SCSI devices and shall postpone arbitration because a lower priority SCSI device had attempted and lost arbitration earlier.
   2) Nonparticipating SCSI devices shall start a lockout timer of greater than 2,4 microseconds.

   NOTE 67 - The SCSI standard requires that all SCSI devices which wish to participate shall begin arbitration within 1,8 microseconds of initial BSY=1 and must activate SEL 2,4 microseconds later.

   3) If another SCSI device begins arbitration within the lockout time-out then:
      1) Nonparticipating SCSI devices shall remove the winning arbitration device ID from the fairness register.
      2) Nonparticipating SCSI devices shall modify the fairness register by removing any SCSI IDs in the fairness register for which fairness is no longer required (i.e., SCSI devices that did not participate in the last arbitration).

      NOTE 68 - This also eliminates SCSI devices from the fairness register which discontinue arbitration prior to ever having won.

      3) At the beginning of the next arbitration the nonparticipating SCSI devices shall start at step 4 above if they still what control of the bus.
   4) If no other SCSI device participates in arbitration within the bus lockout time-out then:

   NOTE 69 - Lockouts can occur as a result of all the SCSI devices waiting for other SCSI devices to start the arbitration process. Although rare, the following example is valid and can occur. Given an initiator at SCSI ID 7 which starts tasks in SCSI devices at SCI IDs 0, 2, and 4. After a while, SCSI devices 0 and 2 begin arbitration, 2 wins and device 0 is recorded in the fairness register of the SCSI device. Assume at the next arbitration, SCSI device 4 would like to arbitrate but does not because of fairness to SCSI device 0. However, this second arbitration is won by the initiator at SCSI device address 7 for purposes of ABORTING the task in SCSI device address 0. The result is that the initiator is waiting for SCSI device 4, SCSI device 4 is waiting in fairness for SCSI device 0 and SCSI device 0 no longer needs to arbitrate since it's task has been aborted.

      1) Nonparticipating SCSI devices shall clear the fairness register.
      2) Nonparticipating SCSI devices shall returning to the first step of the fairness algorithm.

C.4 Additional comments

It is generally desirable for the initiator to be the highest priority SCSI device on the bus. In this way, the initiator is guaranteed to win arbitration and can quickly and easily overlap commands to multiple SCSI devices. To maintain this capability, the initiator should not implement fairness towards lower level targets.

In the case of a multi-initiator system, it would again be desirable for the initiators to be the highest priority SCSI devices. However, in order to implement fairness between them, the higher priority initiator could implement fairness with the lower priority initiators only. This would require a second mask register in which a bit is enabled for each lower priority SCSI device for which a higher priority SCSI device would be fair too.

Annex D

(informative)

Interconnecting buses of different widths

A problem may occur when mixing SCSI-3 devices with SCSI-1 or SCSI-2 devices. The TERMPWR requirements (see table 37) of SCSI-3 have been increased to support a 16-bit data bus. SCSI-1 and SCSI-2 devices may not supply sufficient TERMPWR. An additional source of TERMPWR (e.g., an SCSI-3 device) may be required.

When busses of dissimilar width are adapted to one another as shown in figure D.1 and figure D.2, the DATA BUS signals from the wider of the two busses that end at the adapter should be terminated at the adapter. The connectors are designed such that A and P shielded connectors will not intermate directly.

Two of the RESERVED lines (A cable contact numbers 23 and 24) and the OPEN line (A cable contact number 25) on the A cable are TERMPWR lines on the P cable (P cable contact numbers 33, 34, and 35).

8-bit devices that are connected to the single-ended P cable should leave the following 9 signals open:DB(8-15),DB(P1).

8-bit devices that are connected to the HVD P cable should leave the following 18 signals open:+DB(15-8),-DB(15-8),+DB(P1),-DB(P1).

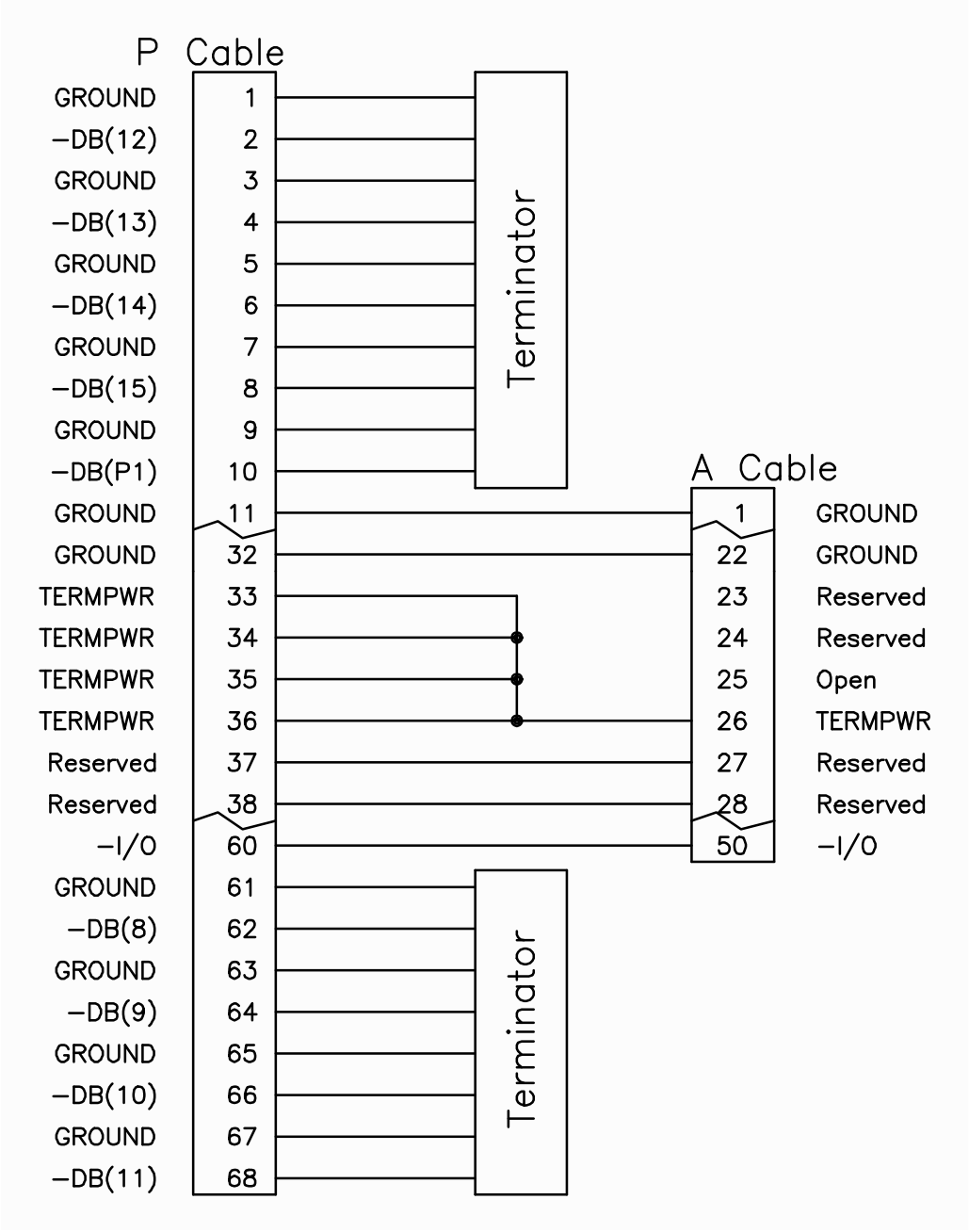


Figure D.1 - Interconnecting single-ended A and P cables

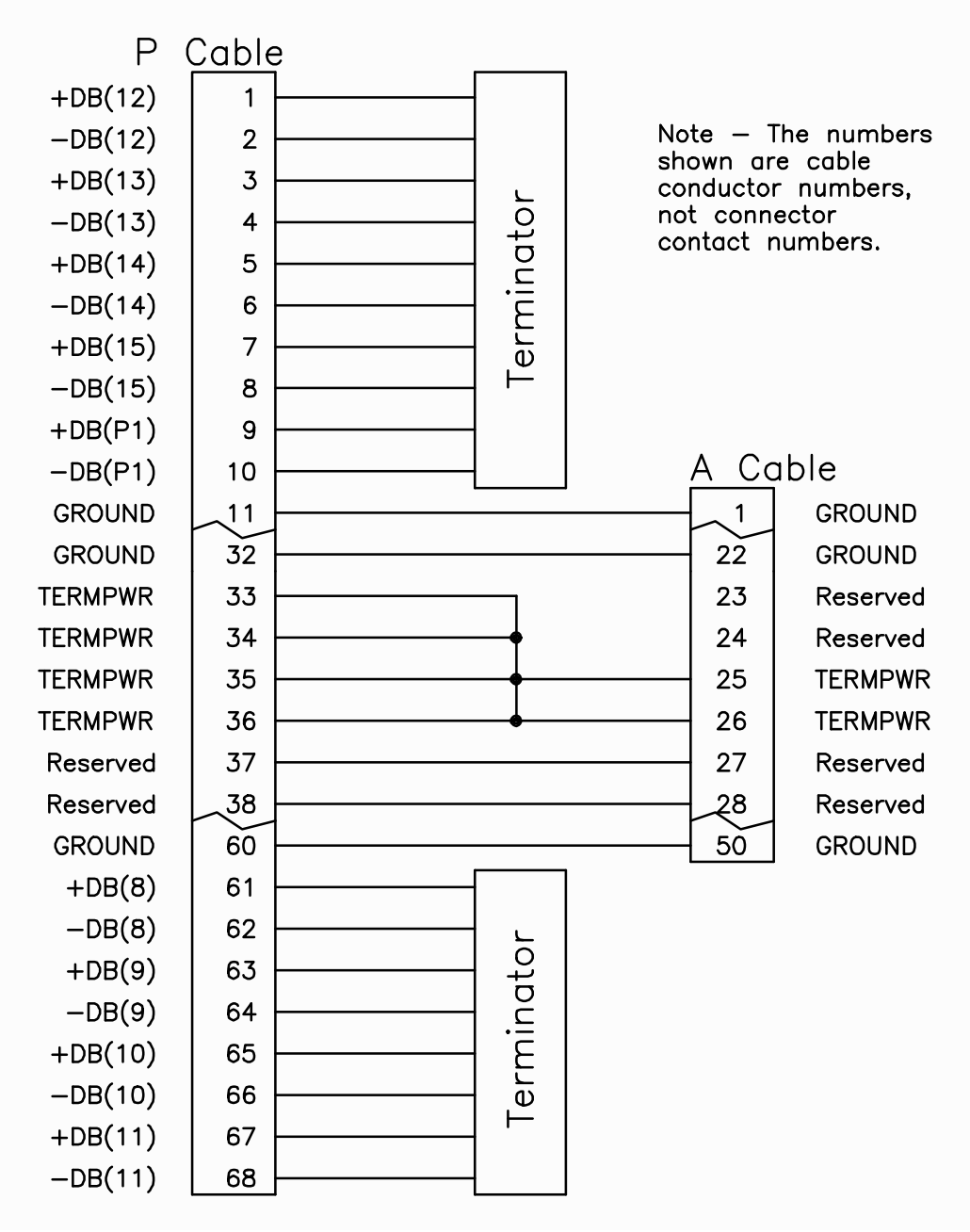


Figure D.2 - Interconnecting HVD A and P cables

Annex E

(informative)

Cabling and cable measurement method recommendations

E.1 Cabling

To minimize discontinuities and signal reflections, the use of cables with different impedances in the same bus should be minimized. Implementations may require trade-offs in shielding effectiveness, cable length, the number of loads, transfer rates, and cost to achieve satisfactory system operation. To minimize discontinuities due to local impedance variation, a flat cable should be spaced at least 1,27 mm (0,050 in) from other cables, any other conductor, or the cable itself when the cable is folded. Also, use of 26 AWG wire in 1,27 mm (0,050 in) pitch flat cable will more closely match impedances of many round shielded cables, resulting in fewer impedance discontinuities and therefore, improved signal quality.

When mixing devices of different widths, particular care should be taken to not exceed the skew allowances provided by the cable skew delay and the deskew delay. These timing parameters can be lowered by reducing SCSI device input capacitance, SCSI device stub length, and the number of SCSI devices attached to the bus. The same precautions should be taken on busses with single-ended devices using fast synchronous data transfers in order to maintain system integrity.

E.2 Cable measurement

The following test procedures are recommended for measuring cable parameters. In addition to the referenced standards, single-ended measurements are made between the signal wire of the pair under test and the ground wire of all pairs connected to the shield.

The following procedure prepares the cable sample for the testing of differential impedance, single-end mode impedance and propagation delay.

a) Cut sample cable length to 6 m.
b) Remove 5,0 cm of outer jacket at each end of the cable sample.
c) Comb out braid wire strands to form a pigtail.
d) Trim filler and tape materials.
e) Strip insulation from all conductors at both cable ends 0,6 cm.

E.2.1 Impedance, TDR, single-ended

Using a time domain reflectometer with a 500 ps maximum rise time, on a 6 m cable sample length, measure the cable impedance between the signal wire of a particular pair and the ground wire of all pairs connected to the shield. The impedance will be averaged between 2 ns and 4 ns from the test fixture/cable interface.

E.2.2 Impedance, TDR, differential

On a 6 m (20 ft) cable sample length, select the pair to be measured. Tie all other wires and the shield together. Using a time domain reflectometer with a 500 ps maximum rise time, make the three measurements indicted in Figure E.1. The values for each measurement are to be averaged between 2 ns and 4 ns from the test fixture/cable interface.

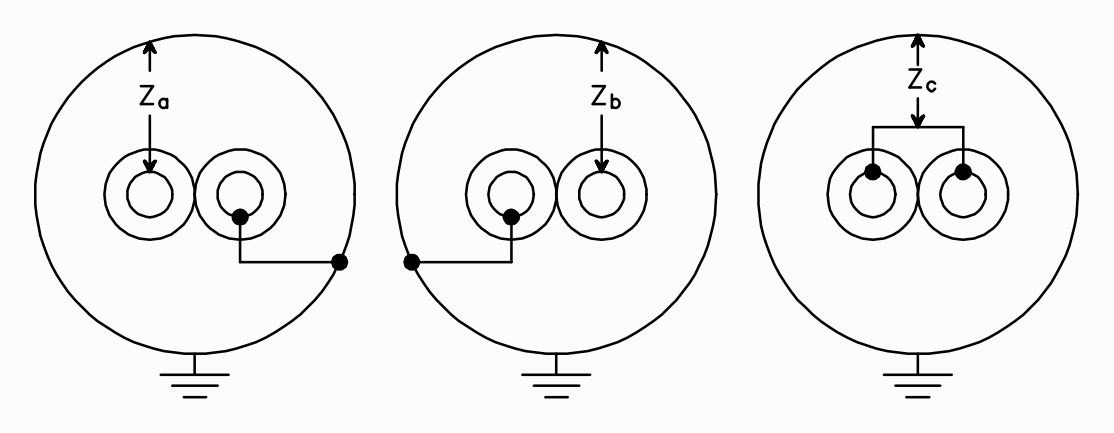


Figure E.1 - Differential impedance measurement

Calculate the differential impedance of the cable using the following equation:

Differential impedance measurements may also be performed using single and dual step differential time domain reflectometers.

E.2.3 Attenuation, differential

Measured in accordance with ASTM D-4566 at a test frequency of 5 Mhz.

E.2.4 Velocity (propagation delay) and skew

Propagation delay is the time it takes a signal to traverse a length of cable. Using a pulse generator with a 1 ns maximum rise time and an oscilloscope or a time domain reflectometer, on a 6 m (20 ft), cable sample length, select the pair to be evaluated. The shield and other pairs are unterminated. Measure the difference between the input and output signal corresponding to the 50% level.

Propagation delay skew is the difference between the maximum and minimum measured propagation delay.

E.2.5 D.C. resistance

Measured in accordance with ASTM D-4566.

Annex F

(informative)

Transmission line considerations for Fast-20 data transfer rates

The SCSI bus is a distributed parameter circuit whose electrical characteristics and responses are primarily defined by the distributed inductance and capacitance along the physical media. The media is defined here as the interconnecting cable(s) or conducting paths, connectors, terminators, and SCSI devices added along the bus. The following analysis derives a guideline for the amount of capacitance (and its spacing) that can be added to the single-ended SCSI buses running up to Fast-20 data transfer rates.

To a good approximation, the characteristic transmission line impedance seen into any cut point in the unloaded SCSI bus is defined by $Z = \sqrt{\frac{L}{C}}$, where L is the inductance per unit length and C is the capacitance per unit length. As capacitance is added to the bus, in the form of devices and their interconnection, the bus impedance is lowered and can be expressed by $Z' = \sqrt{\frac{L}{(C + C')}}$, where C' is the added capacitance per unit length. When capacitance is added to the bus by devices, an impedance mismatch occurs. When a signal wave arrives at this mismatch in impedance, an attenuation (or amplification) of the signal will occur. The magnitude of the attenuation will depend upon the ratio of the mismatched impedance or $A = \frac{Z'}{Z}$, where Z' is the load impedance and Z is the source impedance.

Substituting the equations for Z' and Z and reducing,

1) $$A = \frac{Z'}{Z} = \frac{\sqrt{\frac{L}{(C + C')}}}{\sqrt{\frac{L}{C}}} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{C'}{C}\right)}}$$

We now have a relationship for the attenuation of the signal voltage at an impedance mismatch due to load capacitance distributed on the SCSI bus. Next, a rule for the ratio of Z' to Z will be derived.

With fast transfer rates and electrically long[1] media, it becomes essential to achieve a valid input voltage level on the first signal transition from an output driver anywhere on the bus. This is called incident-wave switching. If incident-wave conditions are not achieved, reflected-wave switching must be used. Reflected-wave switching depends upon reflected energy occurring some time after the first transition arrives to achieve a valid logic voltage level.

In an environment with Fast-20 data transfer rates, the valid low-level input voltage threshold has been raised and the high-level input voltage threshold has been lowered to allow incident-wave switching with some inevitable impedance mismatching and signal attenuation along the media.

The signal voltage at an impedance mismatch is $V_{L1} = V_{L0} + V_{J1} + V_{R1}$, where V_{L0} is the initial voltage, V_{J1} is the input signal voltage, and V_{R1} is the reflected voltage. The voltage reflected back from the mismatch is $V_{R1} = \rho_L \times V_{J1}$ where, $\rho_L = \frac{Z' - Z}{Z' + Z}$ and is the coefficient of reflection commonly used in

1. Electrically long is defined here as $\tau > \frac{t_{10-90\%}}{3}$, where τ is the one-way time delay across the bus and $t_{10-90\%}$ is the 10% to 90% transition time of the fastest driver output signal.

transmission line analysis. The voltage equation can now be written as $V_{L1} = V_{L0} + V_{J1} + (\rho_L \times V_{J1})$.

When an SCSI signal is asserted, the V_{L0} can be at a maximum of 3,7 V and go to 0 V (for a perfect driver) giving a V_{J1} of -3,7 V and the signal voltage must go below the minimum receiver input voltage threshold of 1 V. In equation form,

$$1 > (3,7) + (-3,7) + (\rho_L \times (-3,7))$$
$$\rho_L > \frac{1 - 3,7 + 3,7}{-3,7} = -0,27$$

.

The negative value means that no more than 27% of the input signal voltage can be reflected back towards the source or the minimum assertion level will not be achieved by the incident wave[1].

Now, to relate this to Z'/Z and solving equation 1) for C'/C ,

2)
$$\rho_L = \frac{Z' - Z}{Z' + Z} > -0,27$$
$$Z' - Z > -0,27 \times (Z' + Z)$$
$$Z' \times (1 + 0,27) > Z \times (1 - 0,27)$$
$$\frac{Z'}{Z} > (0,73/1,27) = 0,57$$

and

$$0,57 < \sqrt{\frac{1}{\left(1 + \frac{C'}{C}\right)}}$$
$$\frac{1}{0,57^2} - 1 > \frac{C'}{C}$$
$$\frac{C'}{C} < 2,08$$

We can now say that capacitance should not be added at more than twice the bus-distributed capacitance for incident-wave switching. For example, a cabled bus with L = 295 nH/m (90 nH/ft) and C = 41 pF/m (12,5 pF/ft) and Z = 85 ohms, the guideline becomes to add no more than 85 pF/m (26 pF/ft) anywhere along the bus. This guideline can be met by 25 pF loads spaced 0,3 m (1 ft) from each other, 50 pF spaced 0,6 m (2 ft) apart, or 12,5 pF spaced 0,15 m (0,5 ft) apart. This relationship is shown graphically in figure F.1.

1. A similar analysis can be used for the negation case of 0 V to 2,8 V ([48 mA + 22 mA] x 40Ω) and an input voltage threshold of 1,9 V for a minimum reflection coefficient of -0,32. This leaves assertion as the most restrictive case.

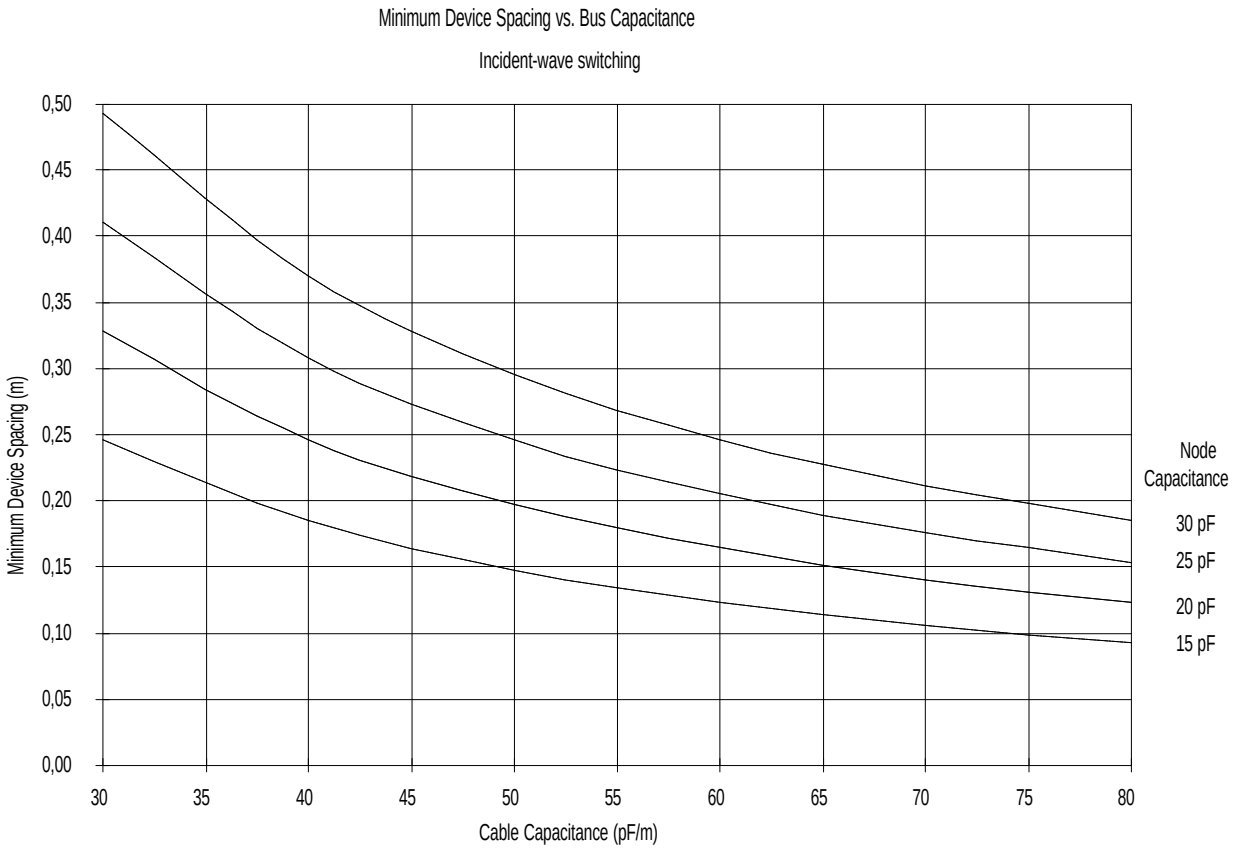


Figure F.1 - Minimum device spacing versus bus and device capacitance

Annex G

(informative)

Terminator, impedance, crosstalk, and bus length considerations for Fast-10 data transfer rates

Editors Note 11 - GOP: This annex will be remove in rev 14 unless someone objects.

SCSI terminators serve two basic functions: to establish the voltage of passively negated lines, and to establish the currents in asserted lines. In some cases they can also be used to match line impedances to eliminate reflections.

G.1 Single-ended alternative for Fast-10 data transfer rates

For SCSI signal transfers to achieve high reliability, SCSI signals at the using receivers must show monotonic transitions from above 2,0 V D.C. to below 0,8 V D.C., or vice versa, with transition times in the 5 ns to 10 ns range. For SCSI bus signals to maintain these standards when encountering lumped capacitances and stubs, it is helpful for the characteristic impedance z_0 of the bus conductors to be relatively low. But for signals to be able to achieve acceptable initial levels when released in passive negation, it is helpful for z_0 to be relatively high. The higher the assertion current furnished by the terminators, the lower the acceptable level of z_0. With the full 24 mA allowed, the minimum allowed z_0 of 72 ohms is generally satisfactory. But note that the allowed 72 ohms applies to the lowest impedance conductor used, not to the average for all the conductors in the cable.

The first widely-used terminator comprised 220 ohm /330 ohm resistor pairs, SCSI-2 Alternative 1. This terminator will meet the 2,5 V minimum voltage requirement with any TERMPWR voltage of 5,0 V D.C. or more but has two important shortcomings:

a) Because it has no regulation, its effect on bus signals varies with any variations in TERMPWR voltage;
b) Even with a nominal 4,7 V D.C. of TERMPWR voltage, it provides only about 20 mA into an asserted line held at 0,2 V. Because of these shortcomings, the use of this terminator is deprecated. The Alternative 2 terminator of SCSI-2--a regulated 2,85 V D.C. circuit node linked to each line through 110-ohm resistors--does not suffer such shortcomings.

Additional margin in the passively negated signal is initially achieved if one of the two devices in a data exchange is at or is very near an end of the bus. In this case, the terminator at this end can be directly effective in improving the initial passive negation levels. Its effectiveness is enhanced if the current it sources at all signal levels is increased over what can be achieved with a simple linear circuit, such as either of those presented above--i.e., if the terminator displays a somewhat current-sourcing characteristic.

Greater margin yet in the passively negated signal is achieved by terminators that deliberately exceed the allowed 24 mA limit on current sourced into an asserted line. Although there must be a reduction in driver MTBF with this practice, experience indicates that it generally is very slight. Such extra current provides protection against lower than optimal cable impedances and possible other deficiencies in implementation. It can, however, hurt the assertion edges of signals received at the ends of long buses.

Crosstalk noise in the bus is not a problem with flat ribbon cable and is best controlled by conductor placement (clocks in the center, data around the periphery) in round, twisted-pair cables. Any other correctives may be harmful by increasing signal skew.

The 3-m and 6-m length limits suggested for 10 megatransfers per second and 5 megatransfers per

second transfers, respectively, are aimed at promoting successful implementations. Where circumstances present a need for longer bus operation, special emphasis must be paid to the guidelines suggested above and in the standard:

a) limit lumped capacitance;
b) limit stub length and crowding;
c) control cable impedance;
d) control current sourced into asserted lines;
e) control crosstalk effects;
f) provide input glitch rejection in receivers;
g) place initiators at or very near bus ends,
h) use active-negation drivers on clock and data lines.

G.2 HVD alternative

The extra cost, power, and space requirements of HVD implementations are compensated for by superior reliability margin. This arises from the noise rejection properties of differential signals, the approximately 1-V noise margins provided, and the fact that all HVD drivers to date have provided active negation. Because of this, there has developed no demand for improvements in the original differential terminator, as presented in figure 38. However, the requirement for good high-frequency bypass right at the terminator is the same as in single-ended.

Crosstalk effects can be significant in long flat ribbon cables, and for this reason the use of twisted pairs in ribbon cables is encouraged. In round twisted-pair cables, crosstalk has generally not been a significant problem.

The ratio of impedances in a cable measured in single-ended and HVD modes corresponds well to the ratio of impedances set forth in this standard for the two modes of operation. Because of this, and because of the relative immunity to crosstalk, round twisted-pair cables optimized for single-ended applications are suitable for differential applications also. There is generally no need to create two separate sets of cables.

Annex H

(informative)

Measuring pin capacitance

The objective of this procedure is to determine the lumped capacitance imposed on each signal conductor of the bus proper by an SCSI device connected thereto. The model for this procedure assumes the bus in ribbon cable form passing through an insulation-displacement SCSI connector, the mating part that is mounted on an SCSI device controller printed-wire board. The bus connector is removed from the device, along with every source of power.

One or more device connector circuit-common pins are connected together to form an effective circuit-common node. An R-F admittance bridge (or equivalent), operation at 1,0 MHz, is connected successively to each signal pin in the device connector, with reference to the circuit-common node.

The signal applied during measurement shall be biased to 0,5 V D.C. and shall be 0,4 V peak-to-peak in amplitude.

The characteristics shall be determined in terms of a parallel combination of a conductance and a capacitive susceptance. The corresponding capacitance thus determined is the maximum signal capacitance referred to in table 25.

NOTE 70 - SCSI signals contain a wide range of frequency components, so that it is not practical to "tune" a bus conductor by loading it with shunt inductance. Consequently, this procedure must be performed without any inductive element connected.

NOTE 71 - If it were desired to perform this procedure on a differential SCSI device, a differential bridge must be used and this procedure modified accordingly.

Annex I

(informative)

SCSI ICONS

These icons are provided as symbols to identify an SCSI port and to indicate whether the port is using:

a) HVD transceivers (figure I.1),
b) single-ended transceivers (figure I.1),
c) LVD transceivers (figure I.2), or
d) SE/LVD multimode transceivers (figure I.2).

The icons illustrated in figure I.1 and figure I.2 may be enlarged or reduced as needed for the application. The text and graphic may be used together or separately. The text font and size may also be adjusted as required.

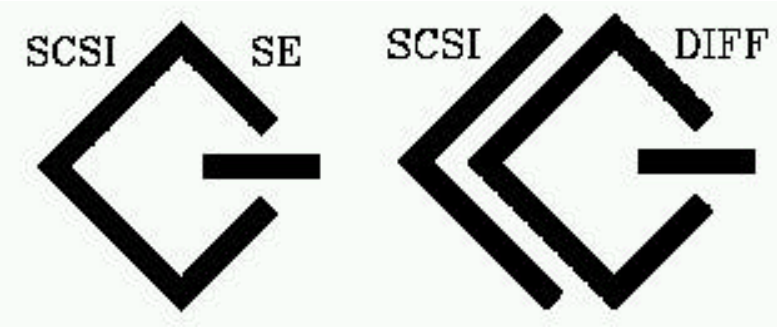


Figure I.1 - SE and HVD icons for SCSI

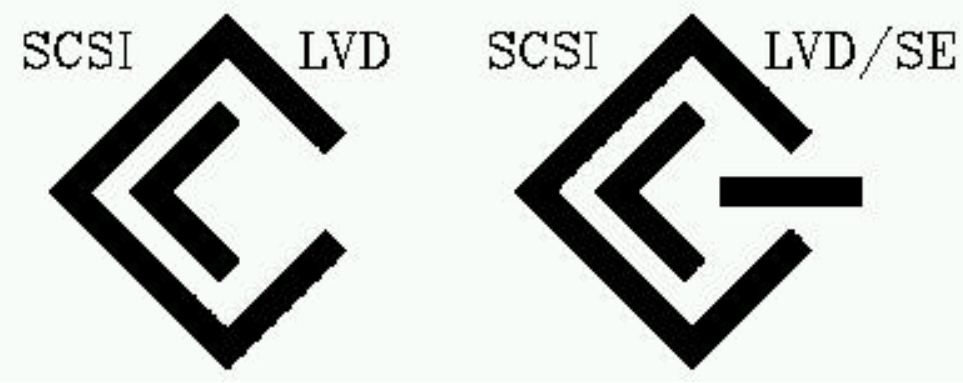


Figure I.2 - LVD and SE/LVE multimode icons for SCSI

Annex J

Informative

SCA-2 Connector pinouts

J.1 SCA-2 Signal Definitions

J.1.1 VOLTAGE and GROUND signals

Three voltage supplies and corresponding ground return signals are provided by the backplane connector to the SCSI device. Table J.1 provides the specifications for each of the voltage supplies. NOTE: The details of the actual SCSI device supply requirements need to be studied for each SCSI device and enclosure combination.

Table J.1 - Voltage specification limits

Voltage	Number of pins	Number of grounds	Requirements on supply at SCA-2 connector	Current capability average/peak
12 V	3	3	12V +5%/-7%	0/0 to 2,5/5 Amps
5 V	2	2 (note)	5V ±5%	0/0 to 2/2,5 Amps
Opt 3.3 V	2	2 (note)	3,3 V ±5%	0/0 to 3/3 Amps
Note: The two logic level grounds are shared between +5V and +3,3V.				

The peak current capability is measured during operation or initialization after voltages have stabilized at the operating level. Inrush currents are managed by the power supply during normal power up and by the CHARGE signals during hot plugging.

For each voltage, the current supplied to the SCSI device should be distributed as evenly as possible among the connecting pins.

The backplane power supplies shall operate correctly and maintain regulation from zero current to the peak current. SCSI Device sequencing provisions may be required to avoid overloading power supplies during SCSI device spin-up sequencing. Voltage dips to -10% are allowed on the 12V supply during spin up.

For each voltage, an appropriate number of current return GROUND signal pins have been assigned.

a) The GROUND signal pins for all voltages shall be tied together in the SCSI device.
b) The GROUND signals in the backplane may be tied together or connected separately to the power supplies as required by the particular subsystem.
c) The logic level grounds, GROUND (5V/3.3V) are shared between the currents provided by the 5V and 3.3V signals. The sum of the 5V and 3.3V currents shall not exceed 3 Amps.

J.1.2 CHARGE signals

Three charge signals, one for each of the power supply voltages, provide controlled precharging of the disk

SCSI device's internal circuits to avoid excessive surge currents during hot plugging.

The precharge pin mates early to allow the precharge to take place before the voltage pins make contact. The precharge control circuits are located on the backplane side of the connector if required. The backplane should assume that the VOLTS signals for each voltage are shorted together with the corresponding CHARGE signal on the SCSI device. Systems without a hot-plug capability or with an alternative hot plugging mechanism are not required to implement the precharge control circuit and are not required to use long and short pins on the backplane connector.

After the SCSI device capacitance is charged, but before the MATED signal indicates that the power signals are seated, the SCSI device shall not use more than 1 Amp on the precharge voltage pin. This is required to protect the precharge pin from over-current damage and to provide additional flexibility in the design of the precharge circuit. The voltage provided by the precharge circuitry shall be as specified by table J.2. Note that any circuitry on the SCSI device that uses the

CHARGE voltage for executing initialization operations shall operate within the current and voltage constraints specified for the CHARGE signals.

Table J.2 - Charge supply to SCSI device

CHARGE signal	Requirements on supply at SCA-2 connector for backplane after CHAGE complete	Maximum surge at SCSI device	Maximum continuous required by SCSI device
12V	12V +5%/-12%	6 Amps	1 Amp
5V	5V +5%/-17%	6 Amps	1 Amp
OPT 3,3V	3,3V +5%/-24%	6 Amps	1 Amp

After precharge is complete and the SCSI device is mated, there is no guarantee that the precharge signal can provide any current to the SCSI device and the SCSI device should not depend on such current for operation.

The system designer should assume that the VOLTS signal(s) and the corresponding CHARGE signal are shorted together on the SCSI device.

J.1.3 SPINDLE SYNC

The spindle synch is assigned a single pin, SPINDLE SYNC. The synchronization protocol and the electronic requirements for the SPINDLE SYNC signal are defined in the SCSI device specification. Industry practice presently requires that SCSI devices interconnected for synchronization be the same or equivalent models.

Spindle synchronization is managed by the SCSI command set. The signal current requirements shall not exceed 100 milliamperes and the signal voltage shall not be higher than 5.25V or lower than -0.25V. The minimum driver capability required by the SPINDLE SYNC signal shall be sufficient to drive the receivers on 30 identical disk SCSI devices.

The SPINDLE SYNC signal when driving should be capable of driving a minimum of 30 identical SCSI devices.

The SPINDLE SYNC signal is a source for noise and may be affected by noise. The design of the SPINDLE SYNC signal interconnections should take this into account by properly laying out the SPINDLE SYNC signals on the backplane or motherboard. Proper layout shall consider routing relative to other signals, the proper line impedance, and terminations if necessary. The selection of the electronic transceiver shall also take into account the possibility of noise. The signal levels, signal rise time, receiver thresholds, and receiver hysteresis shall be considered as part of that selection.

J.1.4 ACTIVE LED OUT

The ACTIVE LED OUT signal is driven by the SCSI device when a SCSI operation is being performed. The ACTIVE LED OUT signal is required to be implemented and is used to indicate that the SCSI device is operating on a command. Other optional indications can be provided by flashing the LED. The host system is not required to generate any visual output when the ACTIVE LED OUT signal is raised, but if such a visual output is provided, it shall be white or green to indicate that normal activity is being performed.

The ACTIVE LED OUT signal is designed to pull down the cathode of an LED. The anode is attached to the proper +5V supply through an appropriate current limiting resistor. The LED and the current limiting resistor are external to the SCSI device.

See table J.3 for the output characteristics of the ACTIVE LED OUT signal

Table J.3 - Output characteristics of drive ACTIVE LED OUT signal

State	Current drive available	Output voltage
Drive LED off	$0 < I_{OH} <$ 100 μA	
Drive LED on	$I_{OL} <$ -30 mA	$0 < V_{OL} <$ 0,8V

J.1.5 Motor Start Controls

The method of starting the SCSI device's motor is established by the signals RMT_START and DLYD_START, as described in table J.4. The state of these signals can either be wired into the backplane socket or driven by logic on the backplane.

Each SCSI device location should have these signals supplied independently to ensure proper operation. If the signals were bussed, a SCSI device with a power failure might clamp the signals in a condition that caused operational SCSI devices to behave incorrectly.

a) If the GROUND state is implemented for RMT_START, bussing between SCSI devices is permissible.
b) If the GROUND state is implemented for DLYD_START, bussing between SCSI devices is permissible.
c) If the OPEN state is implemented for RMT_START, this signal shall not be bussed between SCSI devices.
d) If the OPEN state is implemented for DLYD_START, this signal shall not be bussed between SCSI devices.

Table J.4 - Definition of motor start controls

Case	DLYD_START	RMT_START	Motor Spin Function
1	open	open	Motor spins up at D.C. power on.
2	open	ground	Motor spins up only when START UNIT command is received.
3	ground	open	Motor spins up at D.C. power-on after a delay in seconds 12 times (note) the value of the numeric SEL_ID for the SCSI device.
4	ground	ground	Reserved. SCSI devices not implementing this option shall execute power control according to the rules of case 2.
Note: This value may be reduced by SCSI device suppliers to reflect the worst case time duration of peak current drains at the 12V or 5V source (or both) during motor spin up. In no case should the delay exceed 12 seconds.			

The OPEN and GROUND states are established as described in table J.5.

Table J.5 - Electronic requirements for input controls

State	Current	Voltage
open	$0 < I_{IH} < 100\ \mu A$	$2,4V < V_{IH} < V_{CC} + 0,5V$
ground	$0 < I_{OH} < -3\ mA$	$-0,5V < V_{IL} < 0,4V$

J.1.6 SCSI ID Selection

The SCSI device address of the attached SCSI device is determined by the state of the signals SCSI ID(0-3). Table J.6 indicates the relationship between the level of the SCSI ID signals and the selected SCSI device address.

Table J.6 - SCSI device ID selection signals

Address	ID (0)	ID (1)	ID (2)	ID (3)
0	open	open	open	open
1	ground	open	open	open
2	open	ground	open	open
3	ground	ground	open	open
4	open	open	ground	open
5	ground	open	ground	open
6	open	ground	ground	open
7	ground	ground	ground	open
8 (note)	open	open	open	ground
9 (note)	ground	open	open	ground
10 (note)	open	ground	open	ground
11 (note)	ground	ground	open	ground
12 (note)	open	open	ground	ground
13 (note)	ground	open	ground	ground
14 (note)	open	ground	ground	ground
15 (note)	ground	ground	ground	ground

Note: Addresses in the range of 8 to 15 are only supported by SCSI devices implementing the 16-bit SCSI option.

The OPEN and GROUND states are established as specified in table J.5.

J.1.7 MATED Signals

The MATED 1 and MATED 2 signals are used to indicate to the disk SCSI device that the SCSI device is seated in an SCA-2 connector and can begin its power on processing. The circuit described in figure J.1 or a similar circuit is used to implement the MATED function. The signal requirements are indicated below, but may be met by the example circuit or by similar circuits.

J.1.7.1 MATED 2/Drive Side

The signal is attached to signal ground on the SCSI device side.

J.1.7.2 MATED 2/Backplane Side

The signal is attached either directly or through optional logic in such a manner that the MATED 1 signal is held to a ground level when the MATED 2 connection is completed. If optional logic is used the backplane shall require the SCSI device to sink no more than 100 mA to ground through the MATED 2 pin.

J.1.7.3 MATED 1/Drive Side

The signal is sensed by the SCSI device. When the MATED 1 connection is determined to be at a ground level, the SCSI device can assume that the SCSI device has been completely mated. Normal power up procedures, including sensing of the SCSI ID Selection signals and the motor start controls, can begin 250 msec after the MATED 1 signal is observed to transition to the ground level. When the MATED 1 connection is determined to be at the open level, the SCSI device is not mated. The MATED 1 signal shall be tied up to a TTL positive level when the SCSI device is not installed.

If the SCSI device is mated and operating, it may optionally detect the open level of MATED 1 as an indication that the SCSI device is about to be removed.

If the SCSI device supports detection of the open level of MATED 1 to prepare itself for power removal or for physical removal from the enclosure, the detection shall occur within 1 second from the time that the Mated 1 open level is presented to the SCSI device.

The following SCSI device behaviors are defined:

a) The SCSI device may optionally perform a spin-down operation. This option is controlled by a MODE SELECT operation.
b) The SCSI device may optionally transfer any cached information to the media. This option is controlled by a MODE SELECT operation.

6.4.9.4 MATED 1/Backplane Side

The signal is held to a ground level when the MATED 2 connection is completed. The MATED 1 signal is held to the open level when the MATED 2 connection is not completed. The ground and open levels are defined by table J.5.

The enclosure can optionally control the MATED 1 signal to indicate that the SCSI device is about to be removed.

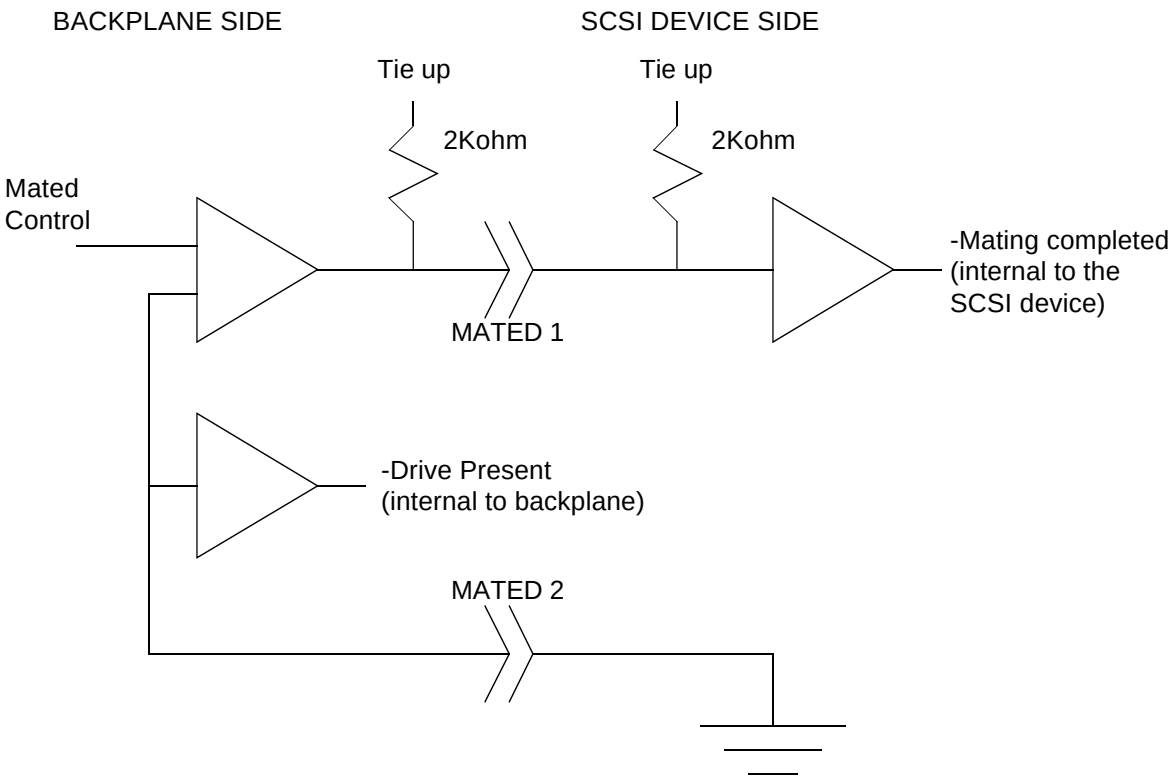


Figure J.1 - Sample circuit for mated indications

Annex K

Informative

SCSI-3 to SCSI-2 terminology mapping

This annex contains a mapping of terminology used in SCSI-2 to the terminology used in this standard (see table K.1).

Table K.1 - SPI-2 to SCSI-2 terminology mapping

SPI-2 equivalent term	SCSI-2 term
abort task	abort tag
abort task set	abort
clear task set	clear queue
head of queue	head of queue tag
ordered	ordered queue tag
overlapped commands	incorrect initiator connection
simple	simple queue tag
target reset	bus device reset
task	I/O process
task complete	command complete
task set	queue